Contents

A-Z

Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine®

# THE BMW X4.

## OWNER'S MANUAL.

**BMW EfficientDynamics**
**Less emissions. More driving pleasure.**

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

CarManuals2.com

# X4 Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for Vehicle.

Supplementary information can be found in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride

BMW AG

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app. Additional information on the Internet:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

© 2015 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English VI/15, 07 15 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

# Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 242.


6 Information

## At a glance
14 Cockpit
18 iDrive
27 Voice activation system
30 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

## Controls
34 Opening and closing
52 Adjusting
63 Transporting children safely
67 Driving
82 Displays
98 Lights
103 Safety
126 Driving stability control systems
133 Driving comfort
155 Climate control
163 Interior equipment
170 Storage compartments

## Driving tips
176 Things to remember when driving
180 Loading
183 Saving fuel

## Mobility
192 Refueling
194 Fuel
196 Wheels and tires
207 Engine compartment
209 Engine oil
213 Coolant
215 Maintenance
217 Replacing components
226 Breakdown assistance
231 Care

## Reference
238 Technical data
240 Appendix
242 Everything from A to Z


CarManuals2.com

# Information

## Using this Owner's Manual

### Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

### Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for Vehicle.

### User's manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, Communication and the short commands of the voice activation system are described in a separate user's manual, which is also included with the onboard literature.

CarManuals2.com

## Additional sources of information

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

Information on BMW, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

### BMW Driver's Guide App

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app. Additional information on the Internet:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

## Symbols and displays

### Symbols in the Owner's Manual

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

♲ Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

"..." Identifies display texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

### Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

### Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

### Symbols on vehicle components

📖 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

# Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, in this Owner's Manual, we also describe and illustrate features that are not available in your vehicle, e.g., because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

CarManuals2.com

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently from what is shown in the illustrations.

# Status of the Owner's Manual

## Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

## Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for Vehicle.

# Own safety

## Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer’s service center.

## Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW dealer’s service center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g. maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, e.g. maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

## Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW dealer's service center.

BMW parts and accessories were tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

CarManuals2.com

### California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

### Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

### Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ BMW Maintenance system
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Data memory

Many electronic components on your vehicle are equipped with data memories that temporarily or permanently store technical information about the condition of the vehicle, events and faults. This technical information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment:



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

- Operating mode of system components, fill levels for instance.
- Status messages for the vehicle and from its individual components, e.g., wheel rotation speed/vehicle speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engaging the stability control system.
- Ambient conditions, such as temperature.

This data is purely technical in nature and is used to detect and correct faults and to optimize vehicle functions. Motion profiles over routes traveled cannot be created from this data. When service offerings are used, e.g., repair services, service processes, warranty claims, quality assurance, this technical information can be read out from the event and fault memories by employees of the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, including the manufacturer, using special diagnostic tools. You can obtain further information there if you need it. After an error is corrected, the information in the fault memory is deleted or overwritten on a continuous basis.

With the vehicle in use there are situations where you can associate these technical data with individuals if combined with other information, e.g., an accident report, damage to the vehicle, eye witness accounts — possibly with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer - such as vehicle emergency locating - you can transmit certain vehicle data from the vehicle.

## Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

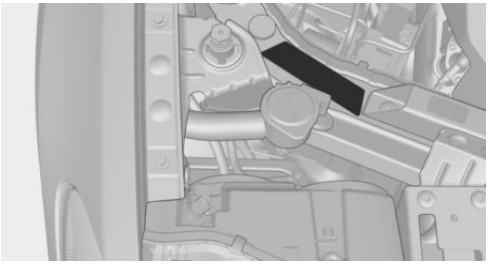
EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

CarManuals2.com

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## Vehicle identification number



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

## Reporting safety defects

### For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

CarManuals2.com

### For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

# At a glance

These overviews of buttons, switches and displays are intended to familiarize you with your vehicle. You will also become quickly acquainted with the available control concepts and options.

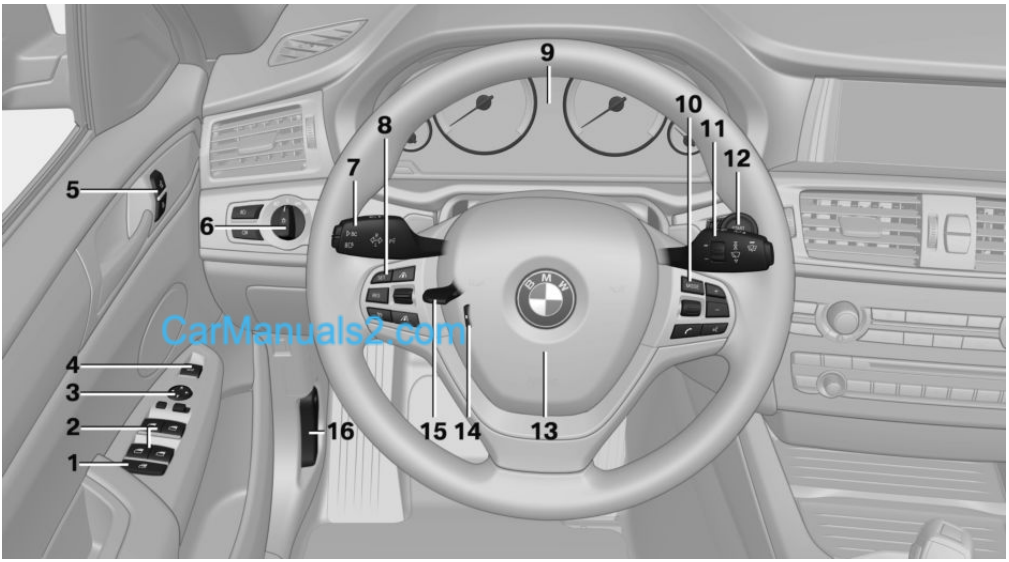
CarManuals2.com

# Cockpit

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## All around the steering wheel




CarManuals2.com

1 Rear window safety switch 48

2 Power windows 49

3 Exterior mirror operation 59

4 Opening and closing the tail-gate 40

5 Unlocking central locking system 40

Locking central locking system 40

6 Lights

Front fog lights 101

Lights off

Daytime running lights 100

Parking lights 98

Low beams 98

Automatic headlight control 99

Adaptive Light Control 100

High-beam Assistant 100

Instrument lighting 102

7 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 73

High beams, headlight flasher 73

High-beam Assistant 100

Roadside parking lights 99

On-board computer 92

8 Steering wheel buttons, left

Store speed 133, 139

Resume speed 133 , 139,

Cruise control on/off, interrupt 139

Active Cruise Control on/off, interrupting 133

Reduce distance 133

Increase distance 133

Cruise control rocker switch 133, 139,

9 Instrument cluster 82

10 Steering wheel buttons, right

Entertainment source

Volume

Voice activation 27

Telephone, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication

Thumbwheel for selection lists 91

11 Steering column stalk, right

Wiper 74

CarManuals2.com

Rain sensor 75

Clean the windshields and headlights 76

12 Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 68

Auto Start/Stop function 69

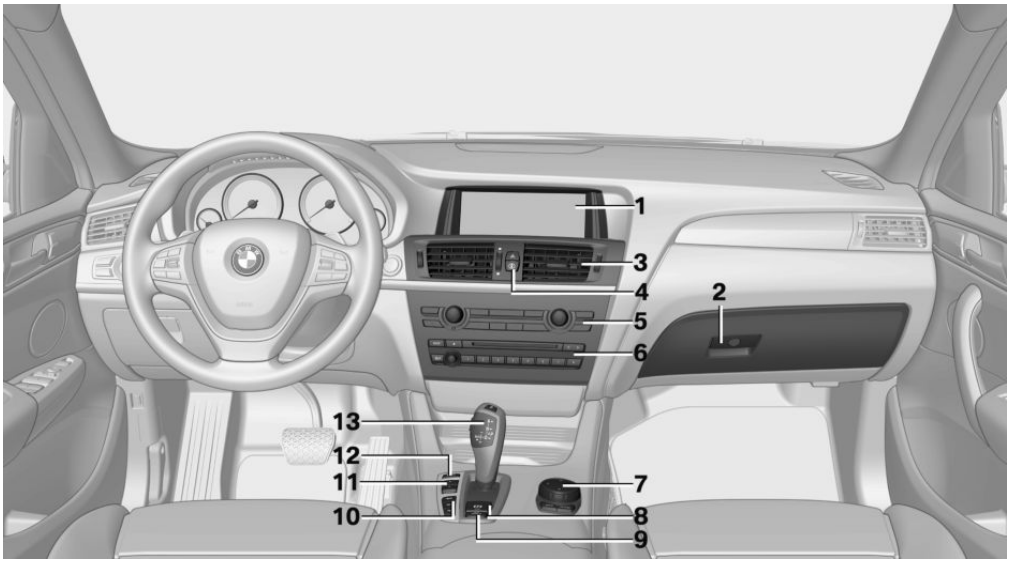
13 Horn, total area

14 Steering wheel heating 61

15 Adjust the steering wheel 61

16 Unlock hood 207

# All around the center console




1 Control Display 18

2 Glove compartment 170

3 Ventilation 161

4 Hazard warning system 226

Intelligent Safety 112

5 Automatic climate control 155

6 Radio/multimedia, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication;

7 Controller with buttons 19

8 Parking brake 71

9 Auto Hold 72

10 PDC Park Distance Control 142

Rearview camera 144

Top View 147

Parking assistant 151

Side View 149

HDC Hill Descent Control 128

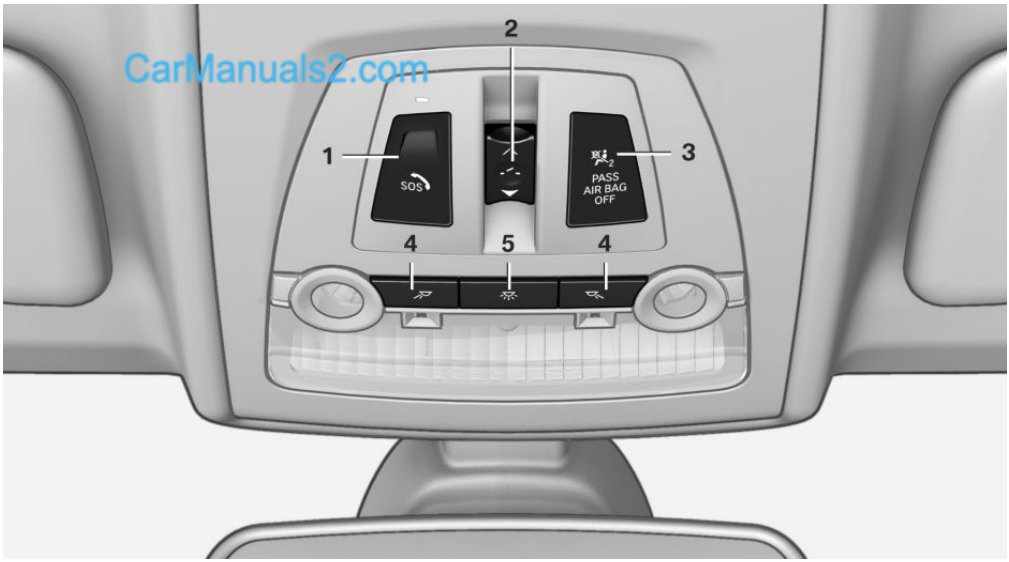
11 Driving Dynamics Control 130

12 DSC Dynamic Stability Control 126

13 Steptronic transmission 77

CarManuals2.com

# All around the roofliner




CarManuals2.com

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | SOS | Intelligent Emergency Request 226 | 4 | | Reading lights 102 |
| 2 | | Glass sunroof, powered 49 | 5 | | Interior lights 102 |
| 3 | PASS AIR BAG OFF | Indicator lamp, front-seat pass. airbag 105 | | | |

# iDrive

## Vehicle features and options

Carmanuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## The concept

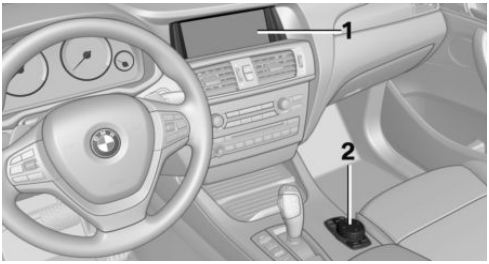
The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

WARNING

Operating the integrated information system and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◄

## Control elements at a glance

### Control elements




1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

### Control Display

#### Information

- ▷ To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.
- ▷ Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.
- ▷ In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, e.g. due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, e.g. through shadow or climate control system, the normal functions are re-established.

#### Switching on

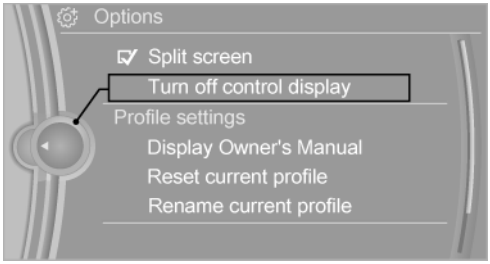
1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the controller.

#### Switch off

1.

Press button.

2. "Turn off control display"

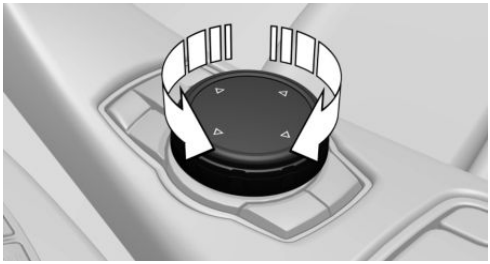



## Controller with navigation system

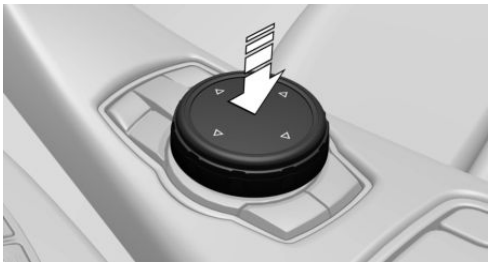
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the controller.

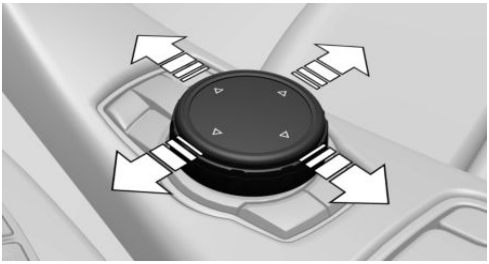
1. Turn.



2. Press.



3. Move in four directions.



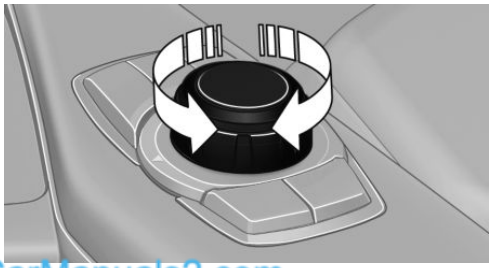
### Buttons on controller

| Press button | Function |
|---|---|
| MENU | Open the main menu. |
| RADIO | Opens the Radio menu. |
| MEDIA | Opens the Multimedia menu. |
| NAV | Opens the Navigation menu. |
| TEL | Opens the phone menu. |
| BACK | Displays the previous display. |
| OPTION | Opens the Options menu. |

## Controller without navigation system

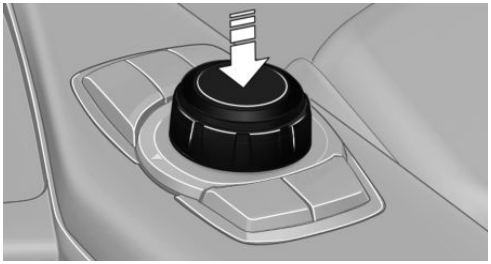
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

1. Turn.

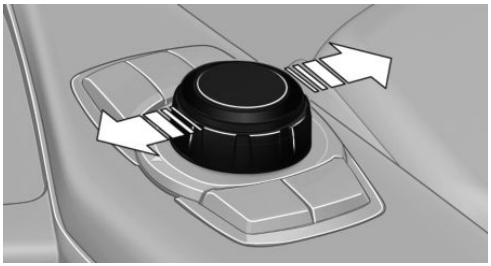


CarManuals2.com

2. Press.



3. Move in two directions.



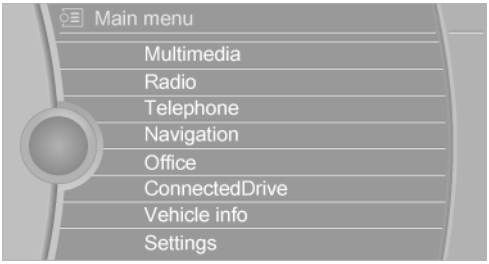
### Buttons on controller

| Press button | Function |
|---|---|
| MENU | Open the main menu. |
| Audio | Open audio menu last listened to, switch between audio menus. |
| TEL | Opens the phone menu. |
| BACK | Open previous panel. |
| OPTION | Opens the Options menu. |

# Operating concept

## Opening the main menu

Press button.



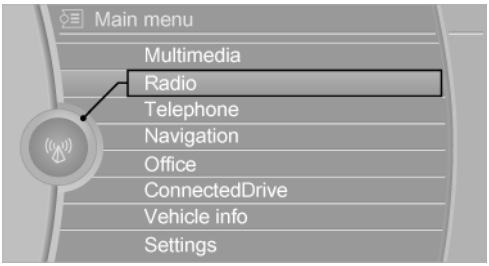

The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

## Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.




2. Press the controller.

### Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

## Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

▷ Move the controller to the left.

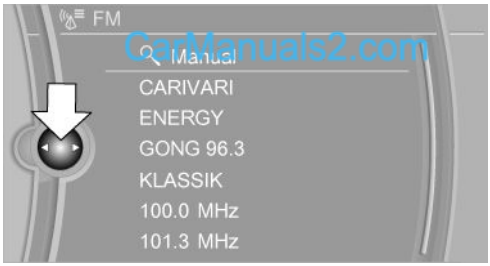
Closes current display and shows previous display.

Reopens previous display by pressing BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

▷ Move the controller to the right.

CarManuals2.com

Opens new display on top of previous screen.



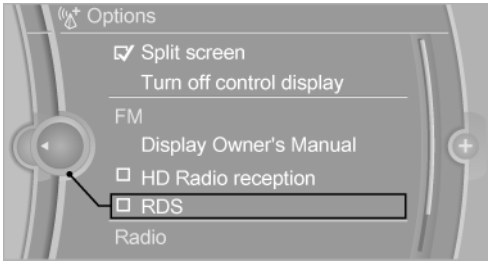

CarManuals2.com

White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

## Opening the Options menu

Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.




Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

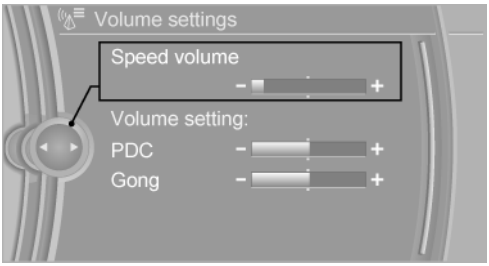
### Options menu

The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".
- ▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".
- ▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

## Changing settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.




3. Press the controller.

## Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

# Touchpad

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

## Selecting functions

1. "Settings"
2. "Touchpad"
3. Select the desired function.
   - ▷ "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Interactive map": viewing the interactive map.
   - ▷ "Browser": enter Internet addresses.
   - ▷ "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

## Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- The system recognizes capital and lower case letters. For the input of upper/lower case letters and numbers, it may be necessary to switch to the corresponding input mode, e.g. when upper and lower case letters are written the same way. Switching between cases, numbers and letters, refer to page 25.
- Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. Possible input depends on the set language. Where necessary, enter special characters via the controller.
- To delete a character, slide to the left on the touchpad.
- To enter a blank space, slide to the right in the center of the touchpad.
- To enter a hyphen, slide to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

## Using interactive map and Internet

Via touch-pad move the interactive map in the navigation system and Internet sites.

| Function | Controls |
|---|---|
| Move interactive map or Internet sites. | Swipe into respective direction. |
| Enlarge/shrink interactive map or Internet sites. | Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers. |
| Display the menu or open a link in the Internet. | Tap once. |

## Changing settings

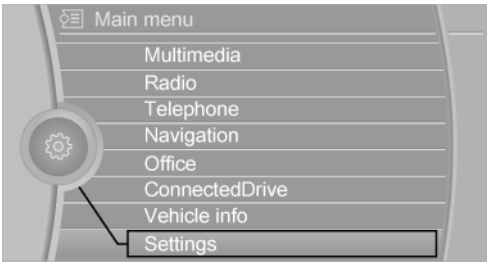
You may change control display settings via touchpad. Swipe left or right accordingly.

# Example: setting the clock

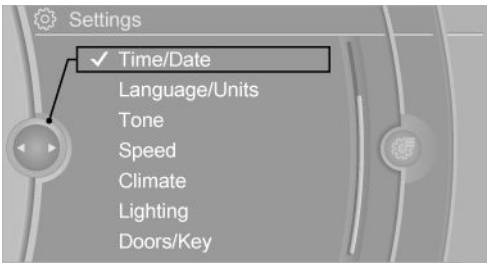
## Setting the clock

On the Control Display:

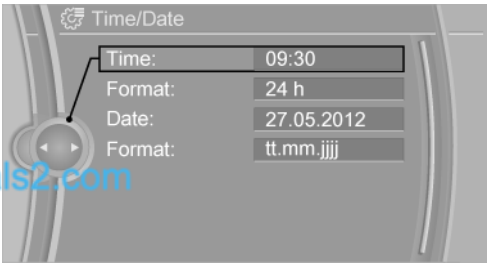
1. MENU Press button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.




3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.




5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.




CarManuals2.com

6. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

# Status information

## Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Current entertainment source.
- ▷ Sound output, on/off.
- ▷ Wireless network reception strength.
- ▷ Phone status.
- ▷ Traffic bulletin reception.

## Status field symbols

The symbols are grouped as follows.

### Radio symbols

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| HD | HD Radio station is being received. |
| | Satellite radio is switched on. |

### Telephone symbols

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Incoming or outgoing call. |
| | Missed call. |
| | Wireless network reception strength.<br>Symbol flashes: network search. |
| | Wireless network is not available. |
| | Bluetooth is switched on. |
| | Roaming is active. |
| | Text message was received. |
| | Check the SIM card. |
| | SIM card is blocked. |
| | SIM card is missing. |
| | Enter PIN. |

CarManuals2.com

### Entertainment symbols

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | CD/DVD player. |
| | Music collection. |
| gracenote | Gracenote® database. |
| | AUX-IN port. |
| | USB audio interface. |
| | Mobile phone audio interface. |

### Additional symbols

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Spoken instructions are turned off. |

# Split screen

## General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the on-board comupter.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

### Switching the split screen on and off

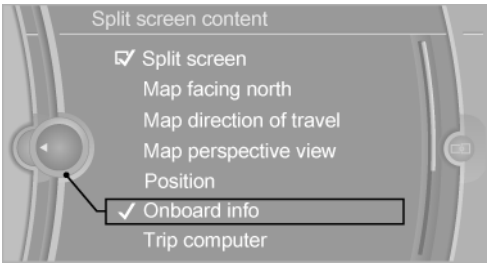
On the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Split screen"

### Selecting the display

On the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.




## Programmable memory buttons

### General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

CarManuals2.com

#### Without navigation system and telephone

Only radio stations can be stored on the buttons, refer to user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

### Saving a function

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. 1...8 Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

### Running a function

1...8 Press button.

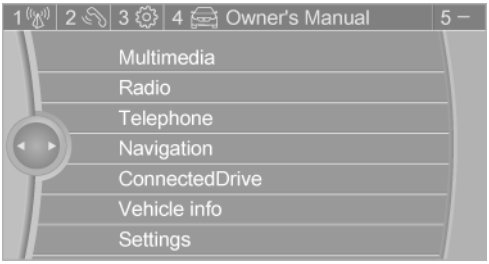
The function will work immediately.

This means, e.g., that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

### Displaying the button assignment

Touch buttons with bare fingers. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at top edge of screen.




### Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approx. five seconds.
2. "OK"

# Deleting personal in the vehicle

## The concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle saves personal data, such as stored radio stations. These personal data can be permanently deleted through iDrive.

## General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- ▷ Personal Profile settings.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored Favorites buttons.
- ▷ Travel and on-board comupter information.
- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Navigation, e.g. stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, e.g. Favorites, cookies.
- ▷ Voice notes
- ▷ Login accounts.
- ▷ RemoteApp smartphone tethering.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 30 minutes.

## Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

## Deleting data

Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete personal data"
5. "Continue"
6. "OK"

# Entering letters and numbers

## General information

On the Control Display:

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

| Symbol | Function |
|---|---|
| I← | Press the controller: delete the letter or number. |
| I← | Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers. |

## Switching between cases, letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers:

CarManuals2.com

| Symbol | Function |
|---|---|
| ABC | Enter the letters. |
| 1@+ | Enter the numbers. |
| abc or ABC | Tip controller up. |

### Without navigation system

@A Aa a@ Select symbol.

## Entry comparison

Entering names and addresses: choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters are offered during input for which data is available.

▷ Target search: names of locations may be entered in languages available through Control Display.

CarManuals2.com



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

# Voice activation system

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## The concept

- ▷ Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.
- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be used via the voice activation system.
- ▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

## Requirements

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

Set the language, refer to page 95.

## Using voice activation

CarManuals2.com

### Activating the voice activation system

1. Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

   A command that is recognized by the voice activation system is announced and displayed in the instrument cluster.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, use function via iDrive.

### Terminating the voice activation system

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

## Possible commands

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

The available commands depend on the menu that is currently displayed on the Control Display.

There are short commands for many functions.

You may select lists such as phone lists via voice activation. Read these lists out loud exactly as they show in the respective list.

### Having possible commands read aloud

You can have available commands read out loud for you: ›Voice commands‹.

E. g. if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.

### Executing functions using short commands

Execute functions on the main menu via short commands. It almost doesn't matter which menu item is selected, e.g., ›Vehicle status‹.

CarManuals2.com

List of short commands for the voice activation system, see Navigation, Entertainment, Communication Owner's Manual.

### Help dialog for the voice activation system

Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹.

Additional commands for the help dialog:

- ▷ ›Help with examples‹: announces information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them.
- ▷ ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system is announced.

## One example: open the tone settings

### Via the main menu

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the controller.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

### Via short command

The desired tone settings can also be started via a short command.

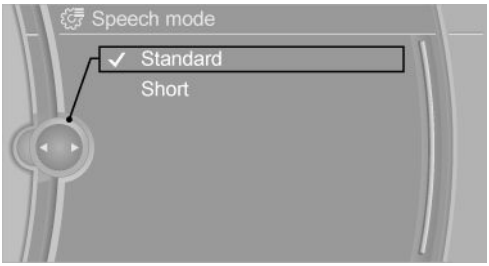
1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Tone‹

## Setting the voice dialog

Set system to standard dialog or use a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech type:"
4. Select setting.




## Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the profile currently used.

## Information on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 226, close to the interior mirror.

## Environmental conditions

- ▷ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

CarManuals2.com

# Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

## Vehicle features and options

CarManuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. It specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

### Components of the Integrated Owner's Manual

The Integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or possible access.

#### Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information how to operate the car, how to use basic vehicle functions or what to do in case of a breakdown. This information can also be displayed while driving.

#### Search by images

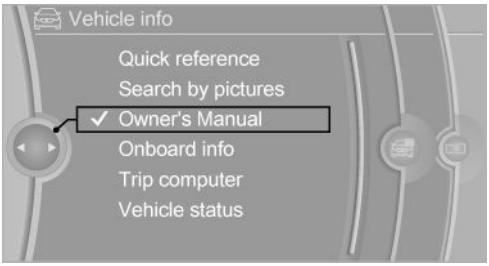
Image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

#### Owner's Manual

Search for information and descriptions by entering terms selected from the index.

### Select components

1. MENU Press button.
2. Turn the controller: open "Vehicle info".
3. Press the controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Search by pictures"
   - ▷ "Owner's Manual"




### Leafing through the Owner's Manual

#### Page by page with link access

Turn the controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

#### Page by page without link access

Scroll through the pages directly while skipping the links.

Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the controller to browse from page to page.

Scroll back.

Scroll forward.

## Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function

You may open the relevant information directly.

### Opening via the iDrive

To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the Options menu:

1. OPTION Press button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"

### Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Display Owner's Manual"

### Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To switch from a function, e. g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5. BACK Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate permanently between the last displayed function and the Owner's Manual repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

CarManuals2.com

## Programmable memory buttons

### General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the Programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

### Storing

1. "Owner's Manual" Select via the iDrive.
2. 1...8 Press selected button for more than 2 seconds.

### Executing

1...8 Press button.

The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

# Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information that will give you complete control of your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

# Opening and closing

## Vehicle features and Options

Carmanuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Remote control/key

### General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

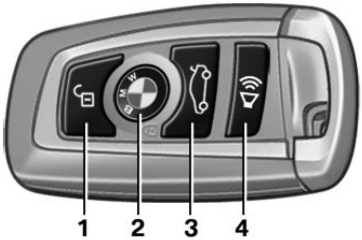
Every remote control holds a replaceable battery.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. For Settings, refer to page 45.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Personal Profile, refer to page 35.

The remote controls hold information on required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 215

### Overview




1 Unlocking

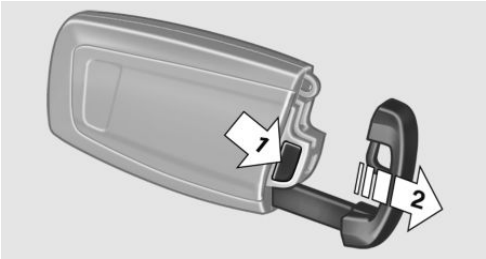
2 Locking

3 Open the tailgate

4 Press briefly: headlight courtesy delay feature

Press and hold: Panic mode

### Integrated key

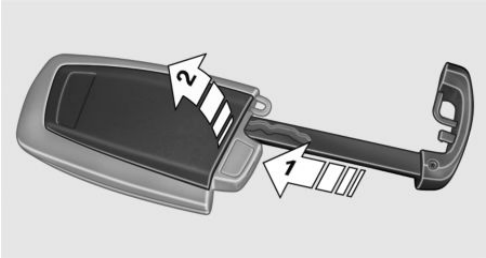



Press button, arrow 1, and remove the key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

▷ Driver's door.

## Replacing the battery




1. Remove integrated key from remote control.
2. Push in the catch with the key, arrow 1.
3. Remove the cover of the battery compartment, arrow 2.
4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.

Have old battery disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take it to a collection point.

## New remote controls

New remote controls are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Loss of the remote controls

The lost remote control can be blocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

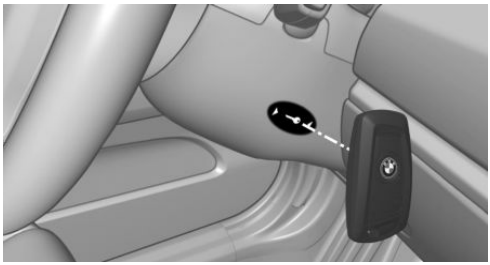
## Emergency detection of remote control

It is possible to switch on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

- ▷ Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external sources e.g. by radio masts.
- ▷ Empty battery in remote control.
- ▷ Interference from radio transmissions through mobile devices in close proximity to remote control.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by charger while charging items such as mobile devices in the vehicle.

A Check Control message is displayed if an attempt is made to switch on the ignition or start the engine.

### Starting the engine with emergency detection of the remote control



Steptronic transmission: if a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the brake.

If the remote control is not recognized: slightly change the height position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

# Personal Profile

## The concept

Personal Profile provides three profiles, using which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal profile will be activated. All settings stored in the profile are automatically applied.

CarManuals2.com

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically saved in the personal profile.

Three personal profiles and a guest profile can be created.

## Adjusting

The settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The scope of storable settings is country- and equipment-dependable.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, tone.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ Park Distance Control PDC.
- ▷ Rearview camera
- ▷ Side View.
- ▷ Head-up Display.
- ▷ Driving Dynamics Control.
- ▷ Driver's seat position, exterior mirror position, steering wheel position.
- ▷ Cruise control.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.
- ▷ Active Blind Spot Detection.

## Profile management

### Opening profiles

CarManuals2.com

Regardless of the remote control in use a different profile may be activated.

About iDrive:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Select a profile.

- ▷ All settings stored in the called-up profile are automatically applied.
- ▷ The called-up profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.
- ▷ If the profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this profile will apply to both remote controls. It cannot be differentiated anymore between the settings for the two remote controls.

### Renaming profiles

A personal name can be assigned to every profile to avoid confusion between the profiles.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"

### Resetting profiles

The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reset current profile"

### Exporting profiles

Most settings of the active profile can be exported.

This can be helpful for securing and retrieving personal settings, before delivering the vehicle to a workshop, e.g. Profiles can be taken to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function.

The following export options are available:

▷ Via BMW Online.

▷ Via the USB port to a USB device.

Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats for profile export. Other formats may not support the export.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. BMW Online: "BMW Online"

   USB interface: "USB device"

### Importing profiles

Profiles exported via BMW Online can also be imported via BMW Online.

Profiles stored on a USB device can be imported via the USB interface.

Existing settings are overwritten with the imported profile.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"
4. BMW Online: "BMW Online"

   USB interface: "USB device"

### Using the guest profile

The guest profile is for individual settings that are saved in none of the three personal profiles.

This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Guest"

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

### Display profile list during start

The profile list can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display user list at startup"

## Using the remote control

### Information

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. The vehicle can then not be opened from the outside. There is risk of injuries. Take the remote control along so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◀

### Unlocking

Press button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 45, the following access points are unlocked.

▷ Driver's door and fuel filler flap.

▷ All doors, tailgate, and fuel filler flap.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

CarManuals2.com

▷ The interior lights are switched on, when it is dark outside, the courtesy lamps are also switched on. This function is not available,

if the interior lamps were switched off manually.

- ▷ The welcome lamps are switched on, if this function was activated.
- ▷ The alarm system, refer to page 46, is disarmed.

## Convenient opening

Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

## Locking

WARNING

Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◂

The driver's door must be closed.

Press button on the remote control.

All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are being locked.

The alarm system, refer to page 46, is armed.

## Switching on interior lights and courtesy lights

Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

The courtesy lamps are only switched on when it is dark outside. This function is not available, if the interior lamps were switched off manually.

If the button is pressed again within 10 seconds after vehicle was locked, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the anti-theft warning system, refer to page 47, are turned off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

## Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

## Opening the tailgate

CAUTION

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The closed tailgate is automatically opened, whether or not the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Depending on the features and the country version, it is also possible to have door unlocked. Create the settings, refer to page 45.

If the doors were not unlocked, the tailgate is locked again as soon as it closes. Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.

CAUTION

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◂

CarManuals2.com

### Switching on the headlight courtesy delay feature

Briefly press the button on the remote control.

CarManuals2.com

The duration can be set in the Control Display.

### Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 35.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside without remote control, refer to page 39.

### For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- LX8766S.
- LX8766E.
- LX8CAS.
- LX8CAS2.
- MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

## Without remote control

### From the outside

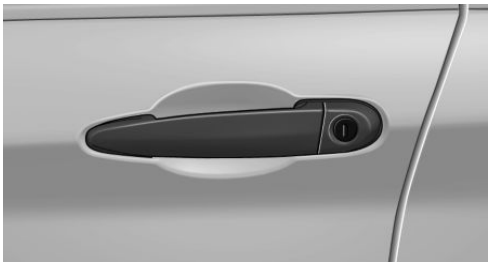
WARNING

Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◀

CAUTION

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or key can be damaged. There is risk of property damage. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.◀



Unlock or lock the driver's door via the door lock using the integrated key, refer to page 34. The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

### Alarm system

The alarm system is not armed if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle was unlocked via the door lock.

In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 35.

CarManuals2.com

## From the inside

### Unlocking and locking

Via the buttons for the central locking system.

▷ By pressing the button, the vehicle is locked with the doors closed.

▷ Pressing the button unlocks the vehicle.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

### Unlocking and opening

▷ Press the central locking system button to unlock the doors together, and then pull the door handle above the armrest.

▷ On the door to be opened, pull the door handle twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

# Tailgate

## Information

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

## Automatic tailgate operation

### Adjusting the opening height

You can set how far the tailgate should open.

CAUTION

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

When adjusting the opening height, ensure that there is a clearance of at least 4 in/10 cm above the tailgate.

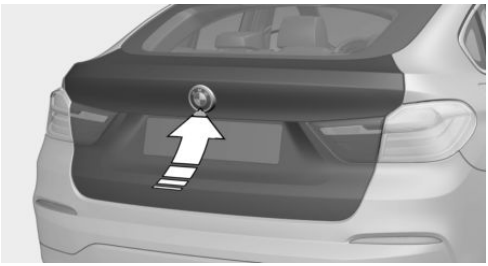
1. "Settings"
2. "Tailgate"

3. Turn the controller until the desired opening height is selected.

## Opening

CAUTION

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀



▷ Press button on tailgate's exterior.

▷ Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

As the case may be, the doors are also unlocked. Opening with the remote control, refer to page 38.

▷ Press button in the driver's door.

If the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically to the adjusted opening height.

The opening procedure is interrupted:

▷ By pressing a button again.

▷ When starting the engine.

▷ When the vehicle starts moving.

▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.

## Closing

WARNING

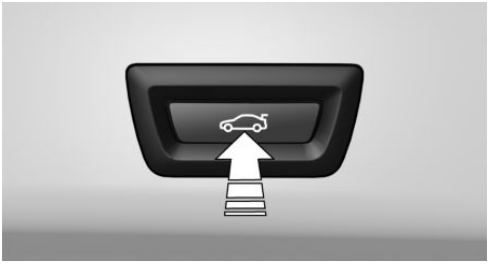
Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

CarManuals2.com

CAUTION

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◀

Without Comfort Access:



▷ Press button on the inside of the tailgate.

With Comfort Access:

▷ Press button, arrow 1, on the inside of the tailgate.

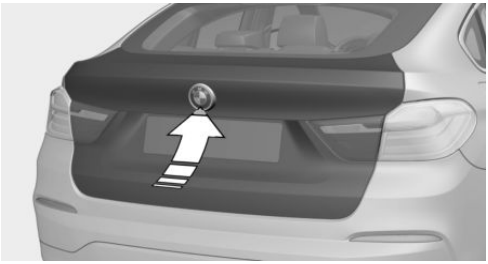
Pressing the button again stops the motion.

▷ Press button, arrow 2.

The vehicle will be locked after closing the tailgate. The driver's door must be closed for this purpose and the remote control must be outside of the vehicle in the area of the tailgate.

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Pressing the button again stops the motion.



▷ Press button on tailgate's exterior.

Pressing the button again stops the motion.

▷ Pull and hold the button in the driver door. Releasing the button stops window/roof movement.

The remote control must be located in the interior for this function.

An acoustic signal sounds and the tailgate closes.

The closing operation is interrupted:

▷ When starting the engine.

▷ The vehicle starts off with jerks.

### Manual operation

WARNING

With manual operation of a blocked tailgate, it can loosen itself unexpectedly from the blockage. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Do not operate the tailgate manually if it is blocked. Have checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

In the event of an electrical malfunction, operate the unlocked tailgate manually with a slow and smooth motion.

### Emergency unlocking

Pull the handle inside the trunk.

The tailgate is unlocked.

## Comfort Access

### The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.

▷ Convenient closing.

▷ Opening the tailgate individually

▷ Open/close tailgate with no-touch activation.

▷ Start the engine.

### Information

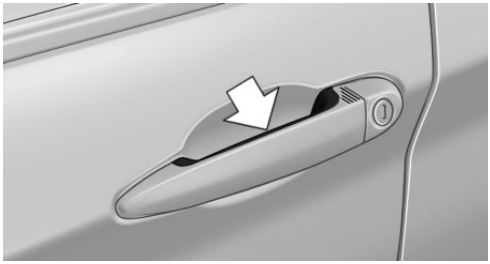
To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

### Functional requirements

▷ There are no external sources of interference nearby.

- To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the remote control is in the vehicle.

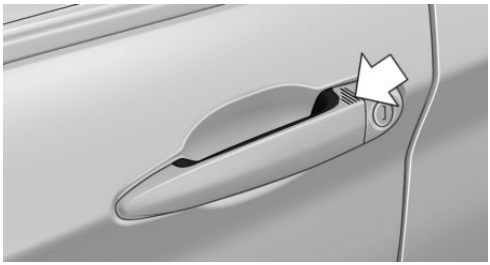
## Unlocking



Grasp the door handle on the driver's or front passenger door completely, arrow.

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control. .

## Locking



Touch the surface on the door handle of the driver's or front passenger door, arrow, with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control. .

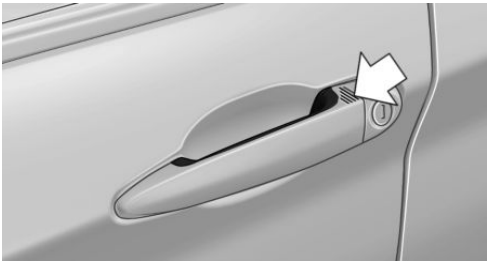
To save battery power, ensure that the ignition and all electronic systems and/or power consumers are turned off before locking the vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

## Convenient closing

WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.◀



Touch the surface on the door handle of the driver's or front passenger door, arrow, with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing and holding the remote control button.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof close and the exterior mirrors fold in.

## Unlocking the tailgate separately

Press button on tailgate's exterior.

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control. .

The situation of the doors does not change.

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the trunk; otherwise, the remote control is locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.

CAUTION

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

## Opening and closing the tailgate with no-touch activation

### General information

The tailgate can be opened and closed with no-touch activation using the remote control you are carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the center of the area at the rear of the car and the trunk lid opens and/or closes.

### Foot movement to be carried out

WARNING

During no-contact activation, vehicle parts may be touched, e.g. hot exhaust system. There is risk of injuries. With the foot motion, make sure there is steady stance and do not touch the vehicle.◀

1. Place in the center behind the vehicle, about an arm's length from the vehicle rear.
2. Move a foot in the direction of travel as far under the vehicle as possible and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.

CarManuals2.com

### Opening

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The tailgate opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

Before the opening, the hazard warning system flashes.

If the remote control is in the sensor area, the tailgate can be closed inadvertently by an unconscious or alleged recognized foot movement.

The sensor range reaches approx. 5 ft/1.50 m behind the area at the rear of the car.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

CAUTION

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

### Closing

Perform the foot movement described earlier.

The hazard warning system flashes on and an acoustic signal sounds before the tailgate closes.

The closing of the tailgate has no effect on the locking of the vehicle.

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Another foot movement can interrupt the closing operation.

If the remote control is in the sensor area, the tailgate can be closed inadvertently by an unconscious or alleged recognized foot movement.

The sensor range reaches approx. 5 ft/1.50 m behind the area at the rear of the car.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

CAUTION

The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◂

### Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 39.

## Adjusting

### Unlocking

The settings are saved in the active profile, refer to page 35.

#### Doors

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

#### Tailgate

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Tailgate"

     The tailgate is opened.
   - ▷ "Tailgate + door(s)"

     The tailgate is opened and the doors unlocked.

CarManuals2.com

### Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The settings are saved in the active profile, refer to page 35.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
   - ▷ "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"
   - ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"

### Automatic locking

The settings are saved in the active profile, refer to page 35.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after start driving"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

### Retrieving the seat and mirror settings

The driver's seat and exterior mirror positions used last are stored for the remote control currently used.

When the vehicle is unlocked, these positions are automatically retrieved if this function was activated.

CarManuals2.com

WARNING

There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

The adjustment procedure is interrupted:

- ▷ When a seat position switch is pressed.
- ▷ When a button of the seat and mirror memory is pressed.

#### Activating the setting

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. "Last seat position autom."

## Alarm system

### The concept

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system responds to:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the car.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly signals tampering:

- ▷ By sounding an acoustic alarm.
- ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

### Arming and disarming the alarm system

When you unlock or lock the vehicle, either with the remote control or via the Comfort Access, the alarm system is disarmed or armed at the same time.

### Door lock and armed alarm system

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, when the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

### Tailgate and armed alarm system

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is armed.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again when the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

### Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

## Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is armed.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after locking:

  Doors, hood or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  After 10 seconds, the indicator lamp flashes continuously. Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active.

  When the still open access is closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

## Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the car is towed.

## Interior motion sensor

The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

## Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

- ▷ In automatic car washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.

### Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off until the vehicle is locked again.

## Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 35.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: if you are carrying the remote control on your person, grasp the driver side or front passenger side door handle completely.

# Power windows

## Information

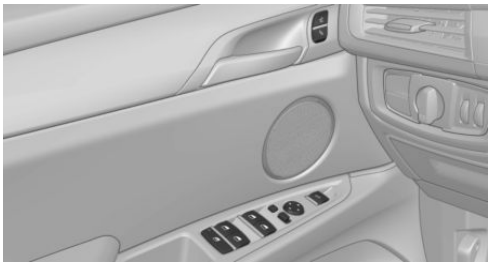
WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

## Overview



## Opening

- ▷ Press the button to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is held.

- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

See also: Convenient opening, refer to page 38, via remote control.

## Closing

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

- ▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is held.

- ▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically. Pulling again stops the motion.

See also: closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 42.

## Pinch protection system

CarManuals2.com

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is risk of injuries. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◀

If closing force exceeds a specific margin as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.

### Closing without the pinch protection system

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

CarManuals2.com

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain margin.
2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection.

## Safety switch

### General information

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, e.g., from opening and closing the rear windows using the switches in the rear.

### Information

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

In order to prevent uncontrolled closing of the windows, press the safety switch, e.g. if children or animals are carried in the rear.

### Switching on and off

Press button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

# Glass sunroof, powered

## General information

The glass sunroof and the sliding visor can be operated together or separately, using the same switch.

The glass sunroof is operational when the ignition is switched on.

## Information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed on operating the glass sunroof. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.◀

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

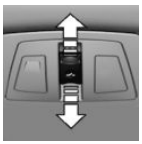
There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

## Tilting the glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof is tilted.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in its tilted position. The sliding visor does not move.

## Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor together



- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

  Glass sunroof and sliding visor open together as long as the switch is held down.

  The glass sunroof closes as long as the switch is held down. The sliding visor can be manually closed.

- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sliding visor open automatically.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. The sliding visor can be manually closed.

  Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

Additional options:

- ▷ Convenient opening, refer to page 38, via the remote control.
- ▷ Closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 42.

## Comfort position

If the glass sunroof is not automatically completely opened, the comfort position has been attained. In this position the wind noises in the interior are the least.

If desired, continue the movement by Pressing the switch.

## Pinch protection system

If the closing force when closing the glass sunroof exceeds a certain value, the closing movement is stopped, beginning at approximately the middle of the opening in the roof, or from the tilted position during closing.

The glass sunroof reopens slightly.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed on operating the glass sunroof. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.◀

CarManuals2.com

### Closing from the open position without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold.

   The pinch protection is limited and the glass sunroof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain margin.

2. Press the switch forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

### Closing from the raised position without pinch protection

If there is an external danger, push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold it.

The glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

## Initializing after a power failure

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent.

### Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed on operating the glass sunroof. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.◀

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

▷ Initialization begins within 15 seconds and is completed when the glass sunroof is completely closed.

▷ The glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

CarManuals2.com

# Adjusting

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Sitting safely

The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 55.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 57.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 103.

## Seats

### Information

WARNING

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is risk of an accident. Only adjust the side on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.◂

WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is a danger of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest in an as upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.◂

CarManuals2.com

WARNING

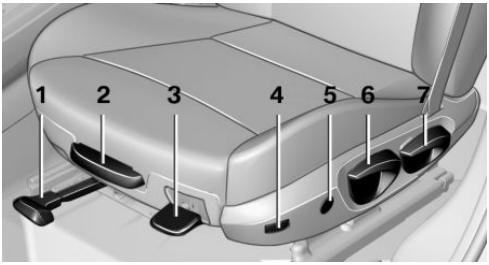
There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◂

### Middle seat

The middle seat is of limited usefulness. It is recommended that this seat only be used by persons who can use the backrest as a substitute for the head restraint.

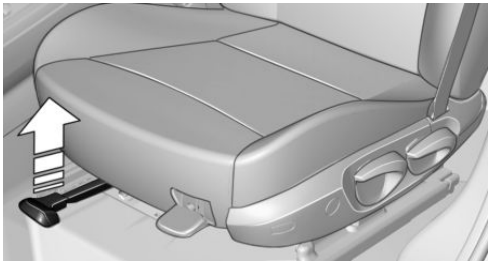
### Manually adjustable seats

#### Overview




1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Seat tilt
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest tilt

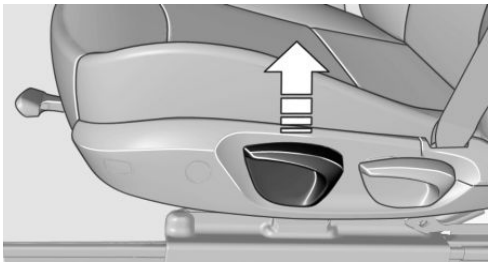
### Forward/backward



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

### Height

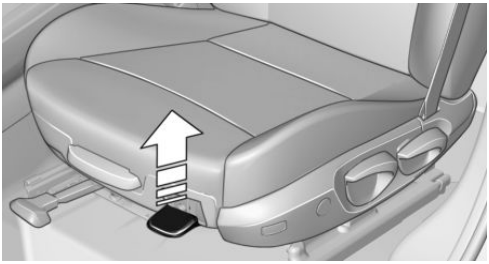


Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

### Backrest tilt

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

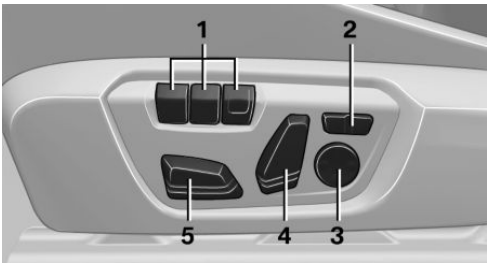
### Seat tilt



Pull the lever and move the seat to the desired tilt. After releasing the lever, apply your weight to the seat or lift it off to make sure the seat engages properly.

## Electrically adjustable seats

### Overview




1 Seat and mirror memory
2 Backrest width
3 Lumbar support
4 Backrest tilt
5 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt

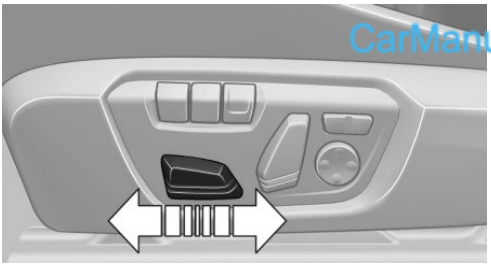
### General information

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored for the profile currently used. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the Function, refer to page 46, is activated for this purpose.

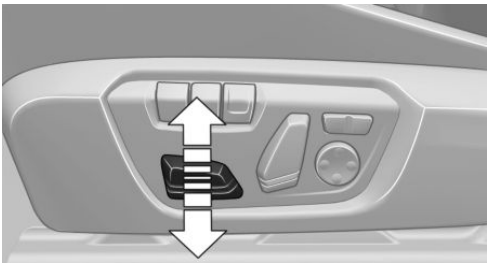
CarManuals2.com

## Adjustments in detail

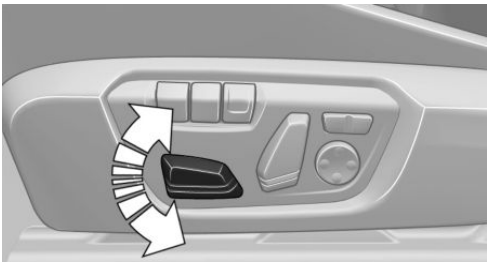
1. Forward/back.



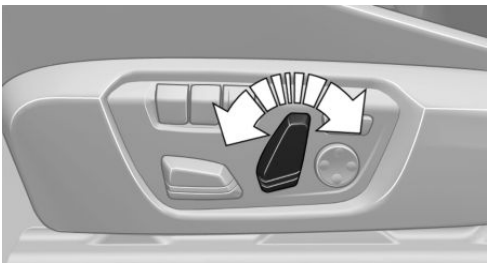
2. Height.



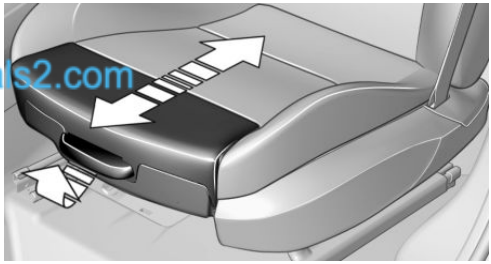
3. Seat tilt.



4. Backrest tilt.



## Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

## Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the switch:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the switch:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

## Backrest width

Change the width of the backrest using the side wings to adjust the lateral support.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

## Front seat heating

### Switching on

Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the journey is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When ECO PRO, refer to page 184, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

### Switch off

Press button longer.

The LEDs go out.

## Rear seat heating

### Switching on

Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the journey is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When ECO PRO, refer to page 184, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

### Switch off

Press button longer.

The LEDs go out.

# Safety belts

## Seats with safety belt

The vehicle has five seats, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

## General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off.

For the occupants' safety the belt locking mechanism triggers early. Slowly guide the belt out of the holder when applying it.

Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

- ▷ The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.
- ▷ The center rear safety belt buckle is solely intended for the center passenger.

## Information

WARNING

If the safety belt is used by more than one person, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt.

CarManuals2.com

Infants and children are not allowed in an occupant's lap, but must be transported and respectively secured in designated child restraint systems.◀

CarManuals2.com

WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.◀

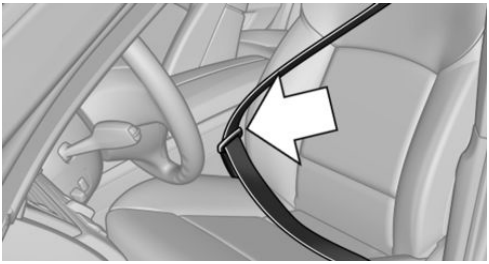
WARNING

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear backrest.◀

## Correct use of safety belts

- ▷ Wear the belt twist-free and as tight to your body as possible over your lap and shoulders.
- ▷ Wear the belt deep on your hips over your lap. The belt may not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not wear the belt on your throat, rub it on sharp edges, guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the belt frequently upward around your upper body.

## Buckling the belt



Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

## Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

## Safety belt reminder for driver's and passenger's seat

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

## Damage to safety belts

WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ Safety belts are damaged, soiled or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Safety belt buckle is damaged or heavily soiled.

▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

CarManuals2.com

Wear and tear after accidents or when damaged otherwise:

Have the safety belts, including the safety belt tensioners, replaced and have the belt anchors checked.

# Front headrests

## Information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is risk of injuries. Install head restraints on occupied seats prior to driving and make sure that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◀

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is risk of injuries.

▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.

▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.

▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.

▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g. pillows, while driving.◀

## Correctly adjusted head restraint

### General information

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

### Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

### Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.

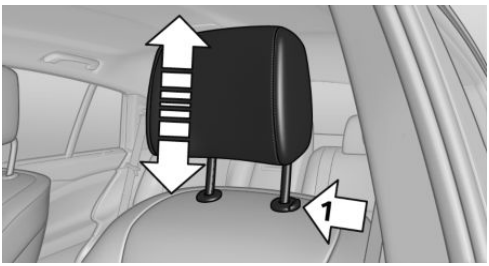
## Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance from the head.

Wear and tear after accidents or when damaged otherwise:

Have the active headrest checked and if needed replaced.

## Adjusting the height




▷ To raise: push.

▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push headrest down.

## Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

# Rear head restraints

## Information

CarManuals2.com

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is risk of injuries. Install head restraints on occupied seats prior to driving and make sure that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◀

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is risk of injuries.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g. pillows, while driving.◀

## Correctly adjusted head restraint

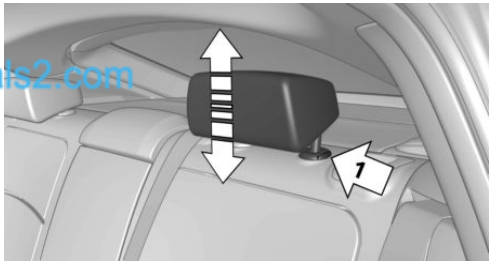
### General information

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

### Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

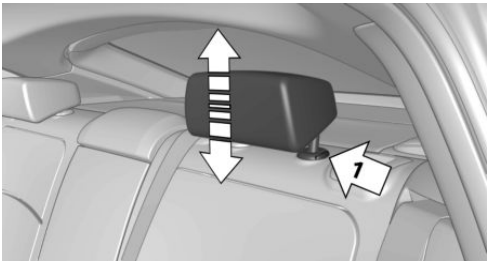
## Adjusting the height




- ▷ To raise: push.
- ▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push headrest down.

## Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.




1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

# Seat and mirror memory

## Information

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is risk of an accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary◀

WARNING

There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

## The concept

Two driver's seat and exterior mirror positions can be stored per profile, refer to page 35, and called up. Settings for the backrest width and lumbar support are not stored in memory.

## Overview

## Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. SET Press button briefly. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press selected button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. The LED goes out.

If the SET button is pressed accidentally:

SET Press button again.

The LED goes out.

## Calling up settings

### General information

There are two ways to call up the memory function:

▷ Comfort function, refer to page 59.

▷ Safety function, refer to page 59.

### Comfort function

1. Open the driver's door.
2. If necessary, switch off the ignition.
3. Briefly press the desired button 1 or 2.

The corresponding seat position is performed automatically.

The procedure stops when a switch for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

### Safety mode

1. Close the driver's door or switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the desired button 1 or 2 until the adjustment procedure is completed.

### Calling up of a seat position deactivated

After a brief period, calling up stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

CarManuals2.com

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

▷ Open or close the door or tailgate.

▷ Press a button on the remote control.

▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

# Mirrors

## Exterior mirrors

### General information

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the mirror setting is stored for the profile currently used. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if this function is active.

## Information

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, e.g. while changing lanes. There is risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.◀

## Overview

1 Adjusting 60
2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Fold in and out 60

## Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror: Slide the switch.

## Adjusting electrically

The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

## Saving positions

Seat and mirror memory, refer to page 58

## Adjusting manually

In case of electrical malfunction press edges of mirror.

## Automatic Curb Monitor

### The concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, e.g.

### Activating

1. Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

### Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger side mirror position.

## Fold in and out

CAUTION

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.◀

Press button.

Possible at speeds up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Beneficial in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ On narrow roads.
- ▷ For folding mirrors back out that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

## Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

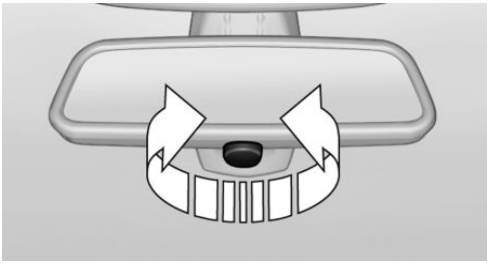
CarManuals2.com

### Automatic dimming feature

Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells are used to control the Interior rearview mirror, refer to page 61.

## Interior rearview mirror, manually dimmable

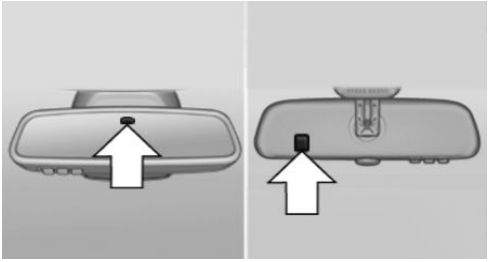
### Turn knob



Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

## Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature

### The concept



Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

### Functional requirement

For proper operation:

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

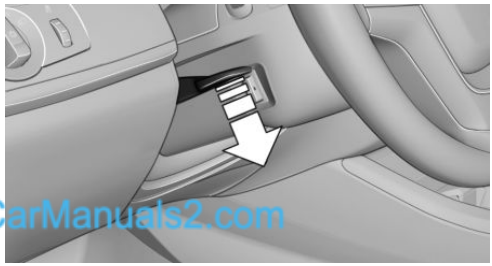
# Steering wheel

## Information

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.◂

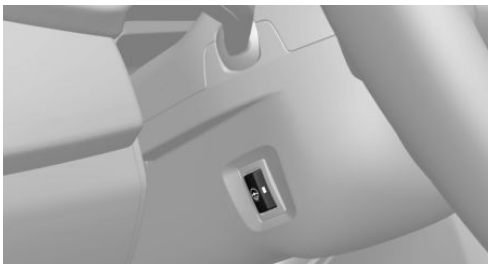
## Adjusting



CarManuals2.com

1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back.

## Heated steering wheel



Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

CarManuals2.com

# Transporting children safely

## Vehicle features and options

CarManuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## The right place for children

### Information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

### Children should always be in the rear

WARNING

Persons shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm cannot correctly fasten the safety belt without suitable additional restraint systems. The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure persons shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable restraint systems.◀

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm in the rear in child restraint systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size.

### Children on the front passenger seat

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 105.

### Information

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◀

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits

securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

# Installing child restraint systems

## Information

Pay attention to the specifications of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

## On the front passenger seat

### Deactivating airbags

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◀

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 105.

### Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

### Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

CarManuals2.com

## Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

The front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

### Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.

3. Allow the strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

### Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in completely.

CarManuals2.com

## LATCH child restraint system

### Information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing system.

### Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

### Information

WARNING

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.◂

### Position

The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols. It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

### Before installing LATCH child restraint systems

Pull the belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

### Assembly of LATCH child restraint systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

### Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

### Mounting points

The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper Top Tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

### Information

CAUTION

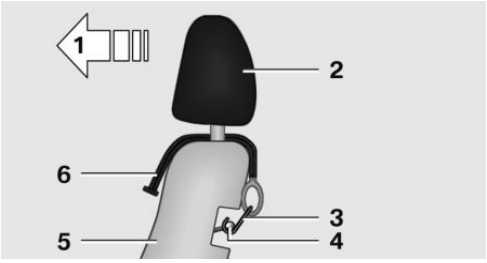
The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is risk of property damage.

Only mount child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◀

### Retaining strap guide

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not guided across sharp edges and without twisting to the upper retaining strap.◀




1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point
5 Seat backrest
6 Upper retaining strap

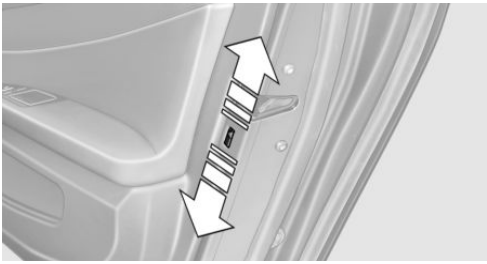
### Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise the head restraint if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. If there is a retaining strap, run it between the backrest and the cargo cover.

   Middle seat: guide the retaining strap through the belt guide on the top edge of the rear seat backrest.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and lock head restraints as needed.

## Securing of doors and windows in the rear

### Rear doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors down.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

CarManuals2.com

### Safety switch for the rear

Press button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 49.

# Driving

## Vehicle features and options

CarManuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Start/Stop button

### The concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Steptronic transmission: The engine starts if the brakes are stepped on while pressing the Start/Stop button.

### Ignition on

Steptronic transmission: Press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the brake.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

### Ignition off

Steptronic transmission: Press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the brake.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

#### Information

When switching off the ignition, the selector lever position P is selected automatically if the selector lever position D or R is selected.

The ignition is switched off automatically in the following situations while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is off:

- ▷ When locking the vehicle, and when the low beams are activated.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.
- ▷ When opening or closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.

The low beams switch to parking lights after approx. 15 minutes of no use.

### Radio ready state

Activate radio-ready state: when the engine is running: press the Start/Stop button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

The radio-ready state is switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ After approx. 8 minutes.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

The radio-ready state remains active if, e.g., the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- ▷ Opening or closing the driver's door.
- ▷ Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- ▷ When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio-ready state if the lights are turned off or, if correspondingly equipped, the daytime running lights are activated.

# Starting the engine

## Information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can put itself into motion and roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g. with a wheel chock.◀

CAUTION

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.◀

CarManuals2.com

## Steptronic transmission

### Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

# Engine stop

## Information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can put itself into motion and roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g. with a wheel chock.◀

CarManuals2.com

### Before driving into a car wash

So that the vehicle can roll into a car wash observe instructions for going into an automatic car wash, refer to page 231.

### Steptronic transmission

#### Switching off the engine

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio-ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

## Auto Start/Stop function

### The concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, e.g., in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts again automatically for driving off.

### Automatic mode

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 70.
When the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph, approx. 5 km/h.

### Engine stop

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ The brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is stationary or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

#### Displays in the instrument cluster

The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

#### Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ External temperature too low.
- ▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- ▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.

- HDC Hill Descent Control is activated.
- The parking assistant is activated.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Selector lever in selector lever position N, M/S or R.
- Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

## Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- Steptronic transmission:

  By releasing the brake pedal.

  When Automatic Hold is activated: press the accelerator pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

### Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

### Functional limitations

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the cooling function is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position D to R, N or M/S.
- Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position P to N, D, R or M/S.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.

CarManuals2.com

## Activating/deactivating the system manually

### Using the button

Press button.

- LED comes on: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

  The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

  The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- LED goes out: Auto Start/Stop function is activated.

### Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e. g., when leaving it.

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

   Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

### Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons as if the driver were absent.

### Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

## Parking brake

### The concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

### Overview

Parking brake

### Setting

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can put itself into motion and roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g. with a wheel chock.◀

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK (P) The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.

CarManuals2.com

### While driving

Use as emergency brake while driving:

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

PARK (P) The indicator lamp lights up red, a signal sounds and the brake lights light up.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the vehicle is slowed down to a speed of approx. 2 mph/3 km/h the parking brake is set.

### Releasing

With the ignition switched on:

Steptronic transmission: Press the switch while the brake is pressed or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

The parking brake is released.

### Automatic release in cars with Steptronic transmission

For automatic release, step on the accelerator pedal.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

The parking brake is automatically released when you step on the accelerator:

- ▷ Engine on.
- ▷ Drive mode engaged.
- ▷ Driver buckled in and doors closed.

## Automatic Hold

### The concept

This system assists the driver by automatically setting and releasing the brake, such as when moving in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

On inclines, the system prevents the vehicle from rolling backward when driving off.

### Overview

AUTO H Automatic Hold

### Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can put itself into motion and roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g. with a wheel chock.◀

Under the following conditions, Automatic Hold is automatically deactivated and the parking brake is set:

- ▷ The engine is switched off.
- ▷ A door is opened and driver's safety belt is unbuckled while the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

PARK (P) The indicator lamp switches from green to red and the letters AUTO H go out.

### Activating

CarManuals2.com

This function can be activated when the driver's door is closed, the safety belt is fastened and the engine is running.

AUTO H Press button.

The LED and the letters AUTO H light up.

AUTO H The indicator lamp lights up.

Automatic Hold is activated.

### Deactivating

AUTO H Press button again.

The LED and the letters AUTO H go out.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press on the brake pedal to deactivate it.

When the parking brake is set manually, Automatic Hold is deactivated automatically.

### Driving

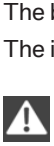
Automatic Hold is activated: the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling after braking to a standstill.

The indicator lamp lights up green.

Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically.

The indicator lamp goes out.



CAUTION

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake. It prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is risk of property damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.◂

### Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold.

The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set if the engine is switched off while the vehicle is coasting to a halt. Automatic Hold is deactivated.

Automatic Hold remains activated during the engine stop brought about by the Auto Start/Stop function.

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle.◂

### Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, e.g., when leaving it.

### After a power failure

#### Putting the parking brake into operation

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

It may take several seconds for the brake to be put into operation. Any sounds associated with this are normal.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation.

## Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

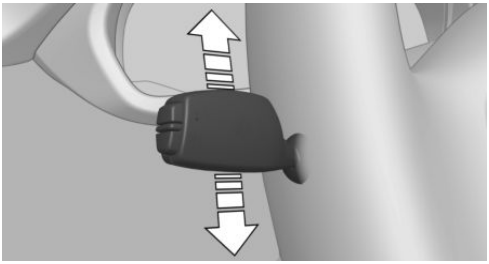
### Turn signal

#### Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

CarManuals2.com

### Using turn signals



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

The turn signal lever returns into is starting position after actuation.

To switch off manually, slightly tap the lever to the resistance point.

### Triple turn signal activation

Slightly tap lever.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Signaling briefly

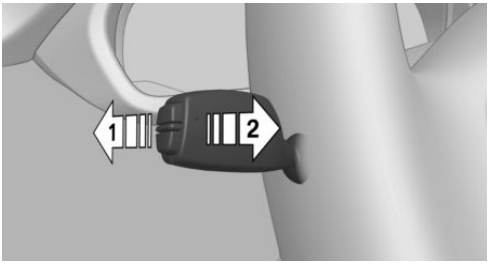
Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

### Malfunction

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

CarManuals2.com

### High beams, headlight flasher




▷ High beams, arrow 1.

▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

## Washer/wiper system

### Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

#### General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

#### Information

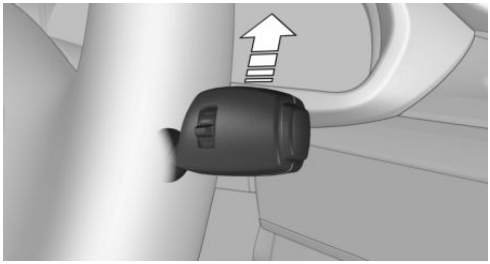
CAUTION

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor overheat on switching on. There is risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, damage may occur to parts of the vehicle or body parts can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

### Switching on



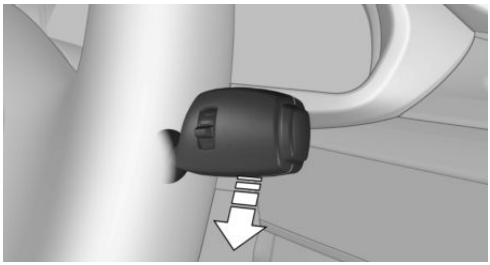
The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- ▷ Normal wiper speed: tap up once.

  The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: tap up twice or tap once beyond the resistance point.

  Wipers change to normal speed when vehicle comes to standstill.

### Switch off and brief wipe



The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- ▷ Single wipe: press down once.
- ▷ To switch off from normal wiper speed: press down once.
- ▷ To switch off from fast wiper speed: press down twice.

## Interval mode or rain sensor

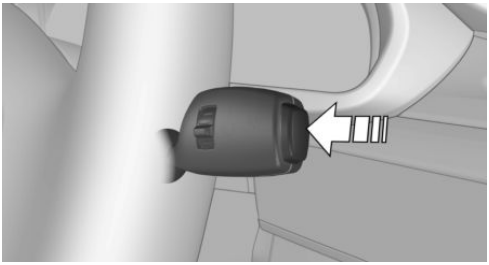
### The concept

Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly behind the interior rearview mirror.

CarManuals2.com

### Activating/deactivating



Press button on the wiper lever.

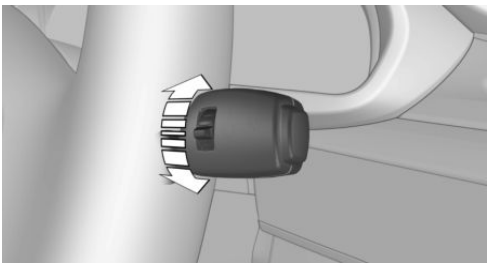
Wiping is started. If the vehicle is equipped with a rain sensor: LED in wiper lever lights up.

When wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.

CAUTION

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.◀

### Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor

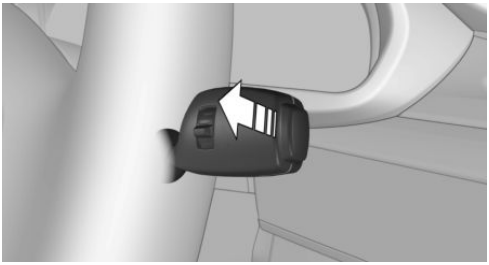


Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

### Clean the windshield, headlights



Pull the wiper lever towards you.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlights are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle's lights are activated.

WARNING

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze if needed.◀

CAUTION

When the wiper water container is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the wash water container is empty.◀

### Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while the ignition is switched on.

### Fold-out position of the wipers

Fold wipers back when you want to change the blades or with pending low temperatures.

CarManuals2.com

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, damage may occur to parts of the vehicle or body parts can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. With icy conditions make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Push wiper lever down. Wipers move to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

## Washer fluid

### Information

WARNING

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is risk of fire and risk of injuries. Observe the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

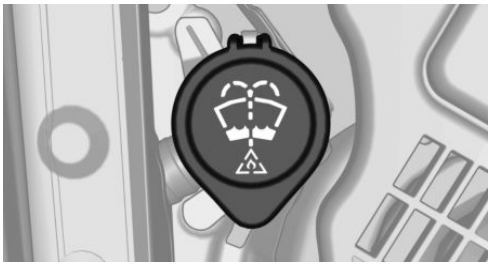
United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.◀

WARNING

Improperly executed work under the hood can damage components and lead to a safety risk. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Have work under the hood be executed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

## Washer fluid reservoir



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir in the engine compartment.

CarManuals2.com

Fill with a mixture of windshield washer concentrate and tap water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the washer fluid before adding to find the right mixture.

Do not add windshield washer concentrate and antifreeze undiluted and do not fill with pure water; this could damage the wiper system.

Do not mix window washer concentrates of different manufacturers because they can clog the windshield washer nozzles.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

# Steptronic transmission

## Selector lever positions

### D Drive

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

### R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

### N Neutral:

The vehicle may roll. Use in automatic car washes, e.g.

When the ignition is switched off, refer to page 67, selector lever position P is engaged automatically.

### P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.

P is engaged automatically:

- ▷ After the engine is switched off when the vehicle is in radio-ready state, refer to page 67, or when the ignition is switched off, refer to page 67, and when selector lever position R or D is set.
- ▷ With the ignition off, if selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ If the driver's safety belt is released, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and selector lever position D or R is set.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

### Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Step on the accelerator pedal

beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

## Engaging selector lever positions

### General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

- ▷ It is not possible to shift out of selector lever position P until the engine is running and the brake is applied.
- ▷ With the vehicle is stationary, press on the brake pedal before shifting out of selector lever position P or N; otherwise, the shift command will not be executed: shift lock.

A block prevents the inadvertent switching to selector lever position P or R or the inadvertent change from selector lever position P.

### Engaging selector lever position D, N, R

Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if needed.

After releasing the selector lever, it returns to its center position.

### Canceling the lock

Press unlock button, arrow.

### Engage selector lever position P

CarManuals2.com

Press P button, arrow.

## Sport program and manual mode

### Activating the sport program

Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

### Activating the M/S manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.
2. Push the selector lever forward or pull it backward.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., M1.

If the situation requires, the Steptronic transmission continues to shift automatically.

Example: once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

### Switching to manual mode

- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the currently selected gear.

### Steptronic Sport transmission: prevent automatic upshifting in M/S manual mode

The Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically upshift in M/S manual mode once the maximum speed is reached, if one of the following conditions is met:

- DSC deactivated.
- TRACTION activated.
- SPORT+ activated.

In addition, there is no downshift for kickdown.

With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and the left shift paddle. However, this effect is not produced via the shift paddles when switching briefly from selector lever position D to manual mode.

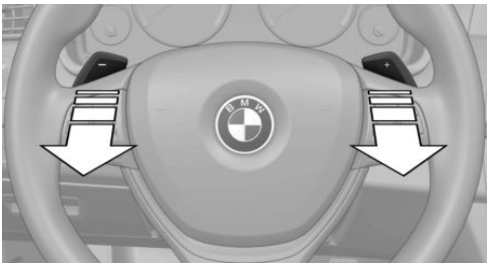
CarManuals2.com

### Ending the sport program/manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Shift paddles



The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

- Shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
- Shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
- With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddle.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

If the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission temporarily switches to manual mode.

If the selector lever is still in selector lever position D with the respective transmission version, it is possible to switch back into the automatic mode:

- Pull and hold right shift paddle.

  or

▷ In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

In the manual mode, after conservative driving for a certain amount of time or if there has been no acceleration or shifting of the shift paddles within a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, e.g.: P.

## Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

### General information

Electronically unlock the transmission lock to maneuver vehicle from the danger area.

Unlocking is possible, if the started can spin the engine.

### Engaging selector lever position N

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start.
3. Press and hold the selector lever into position N.

   A corresponding Check Control message is displayed.
4. Press the selector lever again into position N within approx. 6 seconds.

   Selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the danger area and secure it against moving on its own.

## Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

### The concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction.

### General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 176, period.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

### Requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is warmed up, that is, after uninterrupted driving of at least 6 miles/10 km.

To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

### Start with launch control

While the engine is running:

1.

Press button or select Sport+ with the Driving Dynamics Control.

   TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.
2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
4. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

CarManuals2.com

A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.

5. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

CarManuals2.com

Before using Launch Control, allow the transmission to cool down for approx. 5 minutes.

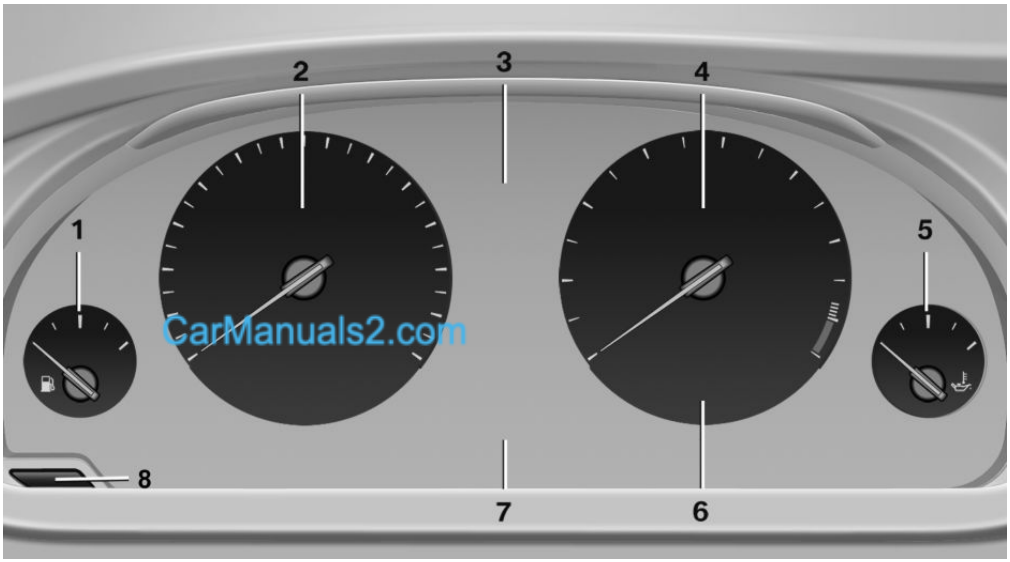
Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, e.g., wet pavement, when used again.

# Displays

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Overview, instrument cluster




1 Fuel gauge 87
2 Speedometer
3 Messages, e.g. Check Control
4 Tachometer 87
5 Engine oil temperature 87
6 Current fuel consumption
7 Electronic displays 82
8 Reset miles 87

## Electronic displays

- ▷ Selection lists, refer to page 91.
- ▷ External temperature, refer to page 87.
- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 69.
- ▷ On-board computer, refer to page 92.
- ▷ Date, refer to page 88.
- ▷ Energy recovery, refer to page 88.
- ▷ Transmission display, refer to page 80.
- ▷ Miles/trip miles, refer to page 87.

- ▷ Messages, e.g. Check Control, refer to page 83.
- ▷ Navigation display, see User's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.
- ▷ Range, refer to page 88.
- ▷ Status, Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 130.
- ▷ Service requirements, refer to page 89.
- ▷ Speed limit detection, refer to page 90.
- ▷ Time, refer to page 87.

# Check Control

## The concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

## Indicator/warning lights

### General information

The indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

### Red lights

#### Safety belt reminder

CarManuals2.com

Safety belt on the driver's side is not buckled. For some country-specific models: passenger belt is not worn or objects are detected on the front passenger seat.

Flashing or illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

#### Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

#### Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

For additional information, refer to Release parking brake, refer to page 71.

#### Brake system

Braking system disrupted. Continue to drive moderately.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

#### Front-end collision warning

Illuminated: advance warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Flashing: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

### Pedestrian warning

Symbol in the instrument cluster.

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

CarManuals2.com

## Orange lights

### Active Cruise Control

The number bars shows the selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead.

For additional information, refer to Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function, ACC, refer to page 133.

### Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control

Illuminated: vehicle driving ahead detected.

Flashing: the conditions are not adequate for operating the system.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

## Yellow lights

### Anti-lock Braking System ABS

Avoid sudden braking as much as possible. Braking force boost may not be working. Stop cautiously. Take into account the longer brake distance. Have checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Flashing: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and adapt driving style to the driving circumstances.

Illuminated: DSC failed. Have system checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 126.

### DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched off or Dynamic Traction Control DTC is switched on.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 126, and Dynamic Traction Control DTC, refer to page 127.

### Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

For more information, see Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 110.

### Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

Illuminated: the Tire Pressure Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flashing and then continuously illuminated: no flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

- TPM could not conclude the reset: perform the reset of the system again.
- A wheel without TPM electronics is mounted: Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: Have system checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For more information, see Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 106.

### Steering system

Steering system in some cases not working.

Have steering system checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Engine functions

Have vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to On-board Diagnostics socket, refer to page 216.

### Lane departure warning

System is switched on and under certain circumstances warns if a detected lane is left without flashing beforehand.

For additional information, refer to Lane departure warning, refer to page 121.

## Green lights

### Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

For additional information, refer to Turn signal, refer to page 73.

CarManuals2.com

### Parking lights, headlight control

Parking lights or headlights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page 98.

### Front fog lights

Front fog lights are activated.

### High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are activated and off automatically as a function of the traffic situation.

For additional information, refer to High-beam Assistant, refer to page 100.

### Cruise control

The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

### Automatic Hold

Function is activated. The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

For more information, see Automatic Hold, refer to page 72.

## Blue lights

### High beams

High beams are activated.

For additional information, refer to High beams, refer to page 74.

## General lamps

### Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

## Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lights.

## Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

### Symbols

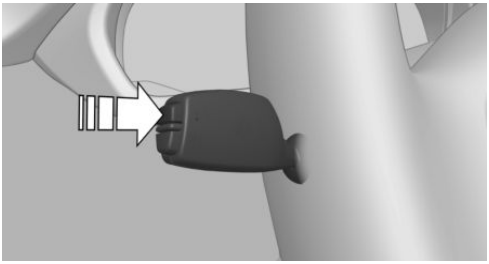
Within the supplementary text, the following functions can be selected independent of the check control message.

- ▷ Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▷ "Service request"

  Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ "Roadside Assistance"

  Contact Roadside Assistance.

## Hiding Check Control messages



Press and hold PC button on blinker lever.

- ▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

  These messages can be faded for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.
- ▷ Other Check Control messages are faded automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

CarManuals2.com

## Displaying stored Check Control messages

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

## Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

## Fuel gauge

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Depending on the equipment version, the arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Hints on refueling, refer to page 192.

## Tachometer

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

## Engine oil temperature

- ▷ Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.
- ▷ Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.
- ▷ Hot engine: the pointer is at the high end of the temperature range. A Check Control message is also displayed.

## Coolant temperature

If the coolant along with the engine becomes too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 213.

## Odometer and trip odometer

### Display

- ▷ Odometer, arrow 1.
- ▷ Trip odometer, arrow 2.

### Show/reset kilometers

Press the knob.

- ▷ When the ignition is switched off, the time, the external temperature and the odometer are displayed.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

## External temperature

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

WARNING

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a danger of icy roads, e.g. on bridges or shady sections of road. There is risk of an accident. Adjust your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.◀

## Time

The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time on the Control Display, refer to page 94.

CarManuals2.com

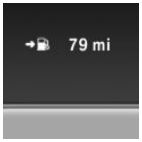
# Date

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Set the date on the Control Display, refer to page 95.

# Range

## Display




With a low remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- ▷ The remaining range is shown on the onboard computer.

▷ With a dynamic driving style, e.g. taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

CAUTION

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are no longer ensured. There is risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

## Displaying the cruising range

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the range can also be displayed as bar in the instrument cluster.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Additional indicators"

## With navigation system: range with destination guidance active

If respective equipment is fitted and destination guidance is active, the remaining range is displayed when the destination is reached.

# Current fuel consumption

## Display

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the current fuel consumption can be displayed as scale with mechanical pointer or as digital bar display in the lower area of the tachometer.

The current consumption displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

CarManuals2.com

## Displaying the current fuel consumption

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the current fuel consumption can also be displayed as bar in the instrument cluster.

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Additional indicators"

# Energy recovery

## Display

The energy of motion of the vehicle is converted to electrical energy while coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

# Service requirements

## The concept

After the ignition is turned on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

## Display

### Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

### Symbols

| Symbols | Description |
|---|---|
| OK | No service is currently required. |
| | The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. |
| | The service deadline has already passed. |

## Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the required inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

On the Control Display:

CarManuals2.com

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Adjust the settings.
7. Confirm.

   The entered date is stored.

## Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the service status or legally mandated vehicle inspections are automatically transmitted to your dealer's service center before a service due date.

You can check when your dealer's service center was notified.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

# Gear shift indicator

## The concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

## General information

Depending on the vehicle's features and country version of the vehicle, the gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

### Steptronic transmission: displays

| Example | Description |
|---|---|
| M3 | Fuel efficient gear is set. |
| 3▸4 | Shift into fuel efficient gear. |

# Speed limit detection

## The concept

### Speed limit detection

Speed limit detection shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster. The camera in the area of the interior rearview mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc. are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as for the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation. The system takes into account the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

CarManuals2.com

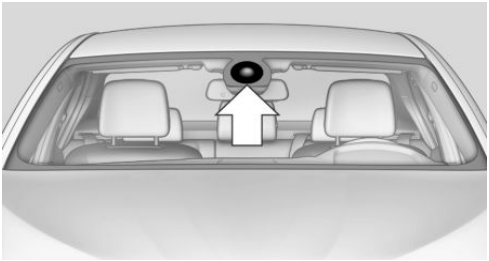
## Information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess visibility and traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◂

## Overview

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Speed limit information"

If speed limit detection is switched on, it can be displayed on the info display in the instrument cluster via the on-board comupter.

## Display

The following is displayed in the instrument cluster:

### Speed limit detection

Current speed limit.

Speed limit detection is not available.

Speed limit detection can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

### System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▷ When signs are concealed by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- ▷ When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- ▷ If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

## Selection lists in the instrument cluster

### The concept

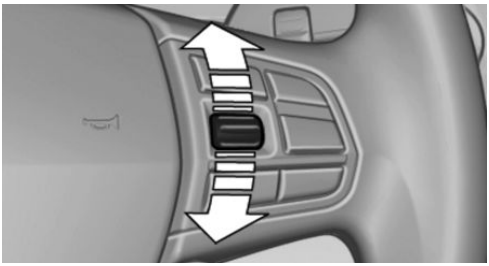
Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the following can be displayed or operated using the buttons and the thumbwheel on the steering wheel as well as the displays in the instrument cluster and the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Redial phone feature.
- ▷ Turn on voice activation system.

### Display

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the list in the instrument cluster can differ from the illustration shown.

### Activating a list and adjusting the setting



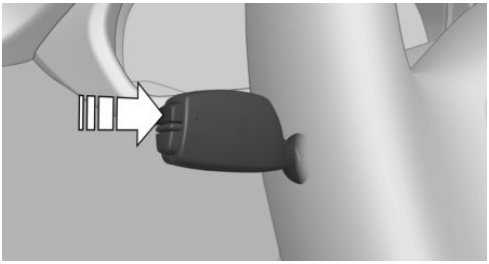
On the right side of the steering wheel, turn the thumbwheel to activate the corresponding list.

Using the thumbwheel, select the desired setting and confirm it by pushing the thumbwheel.

CarManuals2.com

# On-board computer

## Calling up information on the info display

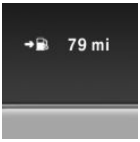


Press and hold PC button on blinker lever.

Information is displayed in the info display of the instrument cluster.

## Information at a glance

### Info display




Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the info display:

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ ECO PRO bonus range.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Speed limit detection.
- ▷ Time of arrival.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Distance to destination.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Arrow view of navigation system.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

  When the arrow view in the Head-up Display is inactive.
- ▷ Compass display in the navigation system.

## Adjusting the info display

Depending on the vehicle equipment version, you can select what information from the on-board computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. Select the desired displays.

## Information in detail

### Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

CarManuals2.com

### Average fuel consumption

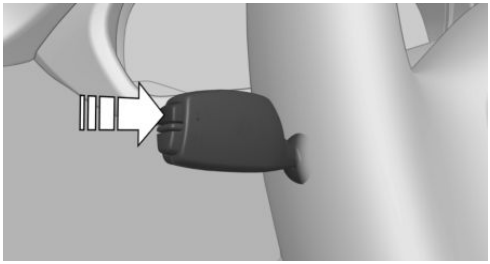
The average fuel consumption is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the on-board comupter.

### Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

### Resetting average values



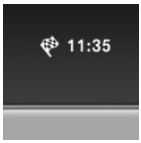
Press and hold PC button on blinker lever.

### Distance to destination

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

### Time of arrival




The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

### Speed limit detection

Description of the speed limit detection, refer to page 90, function.

### Compass

With a navigation system: compass display for the driving direction.

### Trip on-board computer

CarManuals2.com

The vehicle features two types of on-board computers.

- ▷ "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
- ▷ "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.

### Resetting the trip on-board computer

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.

   "Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle came to a standstill.

### Display on the Control Display

Display the on-board comupter or trip on-board computer on the Control Display.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

### Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Consumpt." or "Speed"
4. "Yes"

## Sport displays

### The concept

On the Control Display, the current values for performance and torque can be displayed if the vehicle is appropriately equipped.

### Displaying sport displays on the Control Display

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Sport displays"

# Speed warning

## The concept

CarManuals2.com

Displays a speed, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

## Displaying, setting or changing the speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired speed is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

Speed warning is stored.

## Activating/deactivating the speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the controller.

## Setting your current speed as the speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.

   The current vehicle speed is stored as the speed warning.

# Settings on the Control Display

## Time

### Setting the time zone

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone:"
4. Select the desired time zone.

The time zone is stored.

### Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the controller.

The time is stored.

### Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The time format is stored.

### Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Auto time set"

## Date

### Setting the date

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

### Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

## Language

CarManuals2.com

### Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"
4. Select the desired language.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Setting the voice dialog

Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 28.

## Units of measurement

### Setting the units of measurement

To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## Brightness

### Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

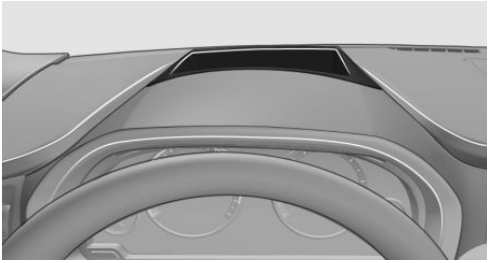
1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

# Head-up Display

## Overview



## The concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e. g., the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

CarManuals2.com

## Information

Follow the instructions for cleaning the Head-up Display, refer to page 234.

## Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Certain sitting positions.
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Switching on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Head-Up Display"

## Display

### Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list from the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

### Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

When the low beams are activated, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Adjusting the height

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the controller until the desired height is reached.
5. Press the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Setting the rotation

The screen of the Head-up Display can be rotated around its own axis.

On the Control Display:

CarManuals2.com

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Rotation"
4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape of the windshield makes it possible to display a precise image.

A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed.

For this reason, it is strongly suggested to have the special windshield replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

# Lights

## Vehicle features and options

Carmanuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Overview

### Switches in the vehicle

The light switch elements is located next to the steering wheel.

### Light functions

| Symbol | Function |
|---|---|
| | Front fog lights |
| | Automatic headlight control<br>Adaptive Light Control |
| | Lights off<br>Daytime running lights |
| | Parking lights |
| | Low beams |
| | Instrument lighting |

## Parking lights, cornering lights and roadside parking lights

### General information

Position of switch: 0 , , .

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings.

### Parking lights

Position of switch: .

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

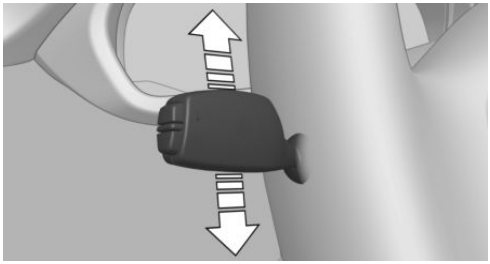
When parking, switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamp, refer to page 99.

### Low beams

Position of switch: .

The low beams light up when the ignition is switched on.

### Roadside parking lights



The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

#### Switching on

With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

#### Switch off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

## Welcome lights and headlight courtesy delay feature

CarManuals2.com

### Welcome lights

Depending on the equipment, when switching off the vehicle, switch position or .

The parking and interior lights light up briefly when the vehicle is unlocked and depending on the ambient brightness.

#### Activating/deactivating

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome lights"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Headlight courtesy delay feature

The low beams stay lit for a short while after the radio-ready state is switched off if the lights are turned off and the headlight flasher is switched on.

#### Setting the duration

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway lighting:"
4. Set length of time.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## Automatic headlight control

### The concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, e.g. in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

### General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

When emerging from a tunnel during the day, the low beams are not switched off immediately but instead only after approx. 2 minutes.

The low beams always stay on when the fog lights are activated.

### Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the low beams are switched on.

### System limits

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

E. g. the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

## Daytime running lights

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D◁≡ , ≡⏱

The daytime running lights light up when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position ≡D◁≡ .

### Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

CarManuals2.com

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## Adaptive Light Control

### The concept

Adaptive Light Control is a variable headlight control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

### Activating

Position of switch ≡⏱ with the ignition switched on.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the driver's side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

The turning lights are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the turning lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering angle.

### Self-leveling headlights

The self-leveling headlights compensate for acceleration and braking operations in order not to blind the oncoming traffic and to achieve optimum illumination of the roadway.

### Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

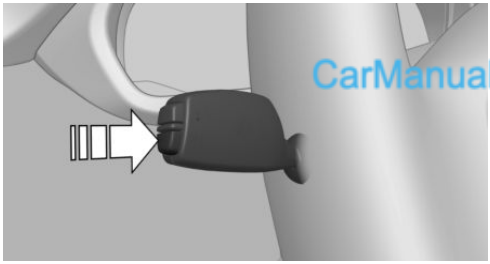
Adaptive Light Control is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## High-beam Assistant

### The concept

When the low beams are activated, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off or suppresses the light in the areas that blind oncoming traffic. The procedure is controlled by a camera on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are activated whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

### Activating



1. Depending on the equipment, turn the light switch into position ≡D or ≡D A .
2. Press button on the turn signal lever, arrow.

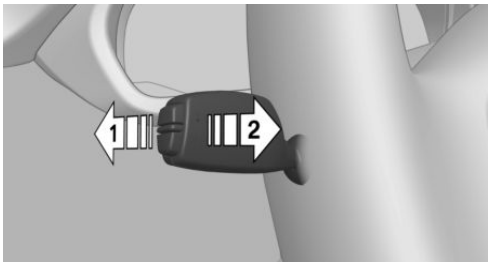
The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the low beams are on, the lights are automatically brightened or dimmed.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.

The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams. Depending on the version of the system in the vehicle, the high beams may not switch off for oncoming vehicles, but may only be dimmed in the areas that blind oncoming traffic. In this case, the blue indicator light will stay on.

### Switching the high beams on and off manually




▷ High beams on, arrow 1.

▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

The High-beam Assistant can be switched off when manually adjusting the light.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever, refer to page 101.

### System limits

The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.

▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.

▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on freeways.

▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.

▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

## Fog lights

### Front fog lights

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on.

Press button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 99, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

# Instrument lighting

## Adjusting

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

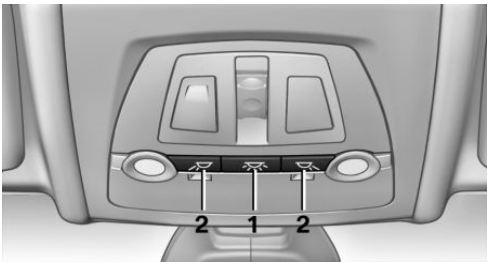
# Interior lights

## General information

The interior lights, footwell lights, access lights and courtesy lights are controlled automatically.

Thumb wheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

## Overview




**1** Interior lights

**2** Reading lamp

## Switching the interior lights on and off

Press button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

## Reading lights

Press button.

Reading lights are located at the front and rear next to the interior lights.

## Ambient light

Depending on the equipment, the lighting can be individually adjusted in the interior for some lights.

### Selecting color scheme

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Ambient:"
4. Select desired setting.

### Setting the brightness

The brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Brightness:"
4. Adjust the brightness.

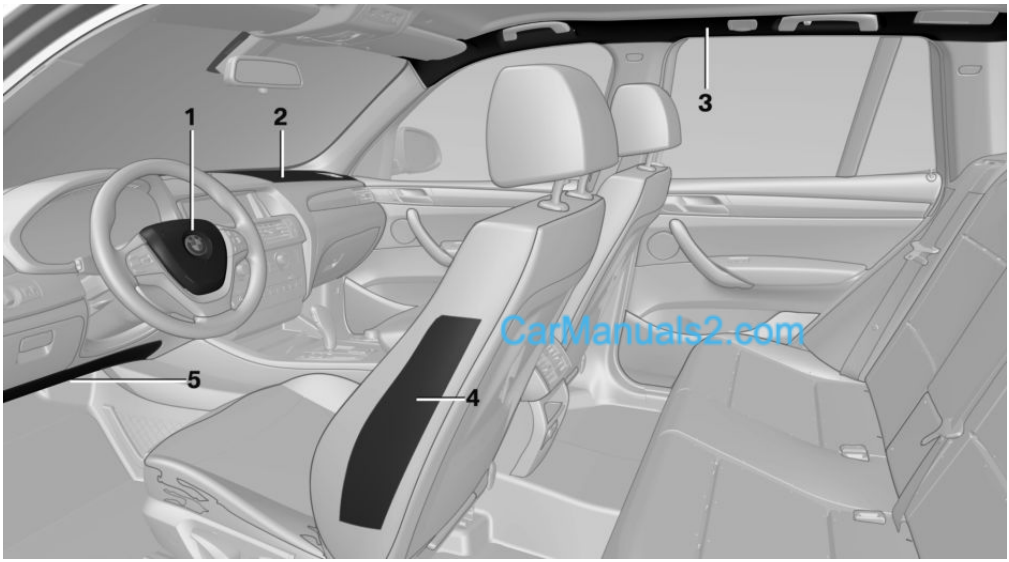
CarManuals2.com

# Safety

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Airbags




1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

### Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate restraint.

### Side airbag

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

### Head airbag

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

### Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

## Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

## Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

### Information for optimum effect of the airbags

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impacted, the airbag system cannot protect as intended or cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Observe the Information for optimum protective effect of the airbag system.◀

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Keep at a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area.
- ▷ There should be no persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, e. g., for GPS devices or' mobile phones.
- ▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▷ Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

## Functional readiness of the airbag system

### Information

WARNING

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is risk of injuries. Do not touch individual components.◀

WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system could not trigger as intended in the event of an accident despite respective accident severity. There is risk of

injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

### Correct function

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

### Airbag system malfunctioning

- ▷ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- ▷ The warning lamp lights up continuously.

## Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

### The concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger's side are either activated or deactivated.

### Information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

WARNING

The ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, it must be detected, whether a person occupies the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.◀

### Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

CarManuals2.com

### Indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, e.g., a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

### Detected child seats

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, particularly in child seats required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

### Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/front passenger's airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger's seat.

With a respective message appearing on Control Display calibrate the front seats to keep the accuracy of this function over the long-term.

### Calibrating the front seats

WARNING

There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

### The concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires. For this purpose, sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

### Information

With use of the system observe further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 196.

### Functional requirements

The system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure; otherwise, reliable signaling of tire inflation pressure loss is not assured.

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

CarManuals2.com

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly.

## Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)"

The status is displayed.

## Status control display

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the Control Display.

### All wheels green

System is active and will issue a warning relative to the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

### One wheel is yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

CarManuals2.com

### All wheels are yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.

### Wheels, gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire due to a malfunction.

### Status information

The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures and, depending on the model, tire temperatures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

## Carry out reset

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

On the Control Display and on the vehicle:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) RESET "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive off.
5. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the status is displayed.

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

The progress of the reset is displayed.

After a successfully completed Reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM) active" is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

## Low tire pressure message

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

- ▷ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
- ▷ No reset was performed for the system. The system therefore issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures before the last reset.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 202, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires. Observe the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◀

A low tire inflation pressure might turn on DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

## Actions in the event of a flat tire

### Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Rectify the flat tire on the damaged wheel.

Use of tire sealant, e.g., the Mobility System, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.

### Run-flat tires

#### Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

#### Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is shown to be correct, it is possible that the Tire Pressure Monitor did not perform a reset. In that case, carry out a reset.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire is damaged and has low or missing tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

#### Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

CarManuals2.com

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Required tire inflation pressure check message

A Check Control message is displayed in the following situations

- ▷ The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.
- ▷ Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.
- ▷ The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last confirmation.

In this case:

- ▷ Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
- ▷ Carry out a reset of the system after a tire change.

## System limits

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, e.g., a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

CarManuals2.com

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature. Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again. These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

## Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

Examples and recommendations in the following situations:

- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics is mounted: Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: Have system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

## Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the

level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

carManuals2.com

# FTM Flat Tire Monitor

## The concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. This will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

## Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable flagging of a flat tire is not assured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

## Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)"

The status is displayed.

## Initialization

When initializing the once set inflation tire pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) RESET "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

## Indication of a flat tire

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires, refer to page 202, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

CarManuals2.com

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires. Observe the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◂

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if needed.

## System limits

A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▷ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

## Actions in the event of a flat tire

### Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Rectify the flat tire on the damaged wheel.

### Run-flat tires

#### Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

#### Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire is damaged and has low or missing tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◂

### Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

# Intelligent Safety

CarManuals2.com

## The concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system. Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent a imminent collision.

- ▷ Front-end collision warning, refer to page 113.
- ▷ Pedestrian warning, refer to page 119.
- ▷ Lane departure warning, refer to page 121.
- ▷ Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 123.

## Information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◂

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◂

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

## Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

▷ The LED goes out.

# Front-end collision warning

Depending on the equipment, the collision warning system consists of one of the two systems:

- ▷ Front-end collision warning with City Braking function, refer to page 113.
- ▷ Front-end collision warning with braking function, refer to page 116

# Front-end collision warning with City Braking function

## The concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

A camera in the area of the rearview mirror controls the system.

CarManuals2.com

The front-end collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

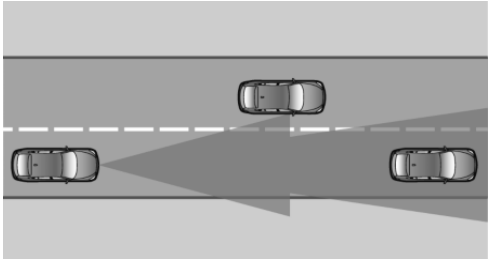
With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the collision warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

## General information

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

## Detection range



It responds to objects if they are detected by the system.

## Information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

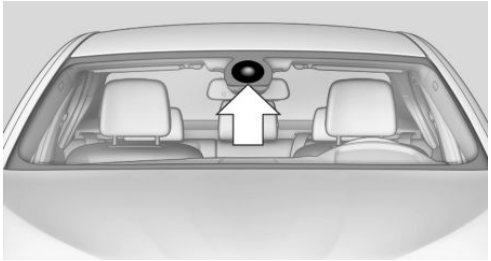
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

CarManuals2.com

Intelligent Safety button

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

### Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▷ The LED goes out.

### Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set via iDrive.

1. "Settings"
2. "Frontal Coll. Warning"
3. Activate the desired time on the Control Display.

The selected time is stored for the profile currently used.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

If a collision with a recognized vehicle is imminent a warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

| Symbol | Measure |
|---|---|
| | Symbol lights up red: prewarning.<br>Brake and increase distance. |
| | Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning.<br>You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver. |

### Prewarning

This warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

### Acute warning with braking function

Acute warning in displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

### Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on and Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

## System limits

### Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, e.g., DSC OFF.
- ▷ If, depending on the vehicle equipment version, the field of view of the camera in the mirror or the radar sensor is dirty or obscured.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.

### Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, e.g. the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. However, there may also be an excess of false warnings.

# Collision warning with braking function

## The concept

CarManuals2.com

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently if needed.

The automatic braking intervention may be executed with maximum braking force and for a brief period only as necessary.

If the vehicle is equipped with Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, the front-end collision warning is controlled via the cruise control radar sensor in conjunction with a camera.

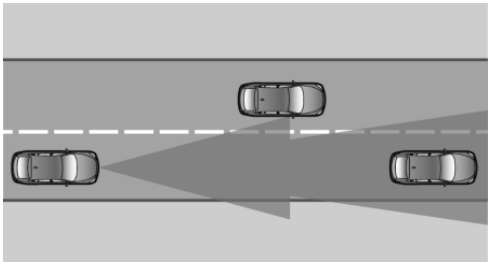
The front-end collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the collision warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

## General information

The system issues a two-phase warning of a possible danger of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

### Detection range



It responds to objects if they are detected by the system.

## Information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

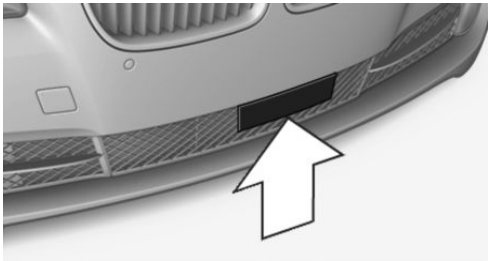
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

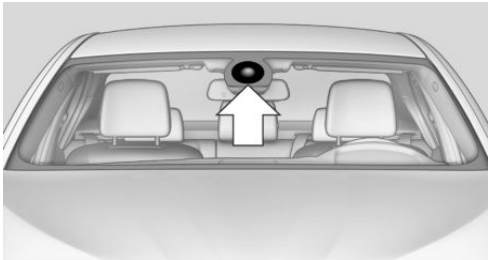
### Radar sensor



The radar sensor is located in the lower area of the front bumper.

Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

### Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▷ The LED goes out.

### Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set via iDrive.

1. "Settings"
2. "Frontal Coll. Warning"
3. Activate the desired time on the Control Display.

The selected time is stored for the profile currently used.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

If a collision with a recognized vehicle is imminent a warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

| Symbol | Measure |
|---|---|
| | Symbol lights up red: prewarning.<br>Brake and increase distance. |
| | Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning.<br>You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver. |

CarManuals2.com

### Prewarning

This warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

### Acute warning with braking function

Acute warning in displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by an automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

### Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with automatic braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. The intervention can bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on and Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated.

Above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h the braking intervention occurs as a brief braking pressure. No automatic delay occurs.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

## System limits

### Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, e.g., DSC OFF.
- ▷ If, depending on the vehicle equipment version, the field of view of the camera in the mirror or the radar sensor is dirty or obscured.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.

CarManuals2.com

### Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, e.g. the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. However, there may also be an excess of false warnings.

# Pedestrian warning with city braking function

## The concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

The system issues a warning in the city driving speed area if there is imminent danger of a collision with pedestrians and includes a braking function.

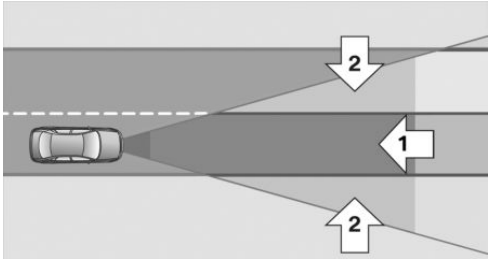
The camera in the area of the rearview mirror controls the system.

## General information

With sufficient brightness, the system warns about possible collision danger with pedestrians starting at approx. 6 mph/10 km/h to approx. 35 mph/60 km/h and assists with braking before a collision.

Under those circumstances it reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

### Detection range




The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

## Information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◂

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◂

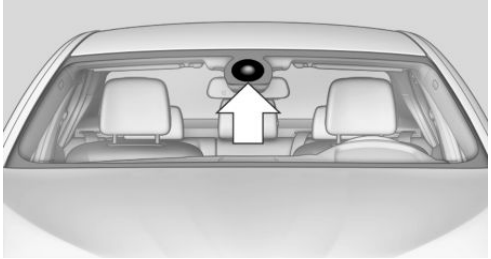
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

CarManuals2.com

## Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

### Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

- ▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

- ▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

- ▷ The LED goes out.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

CarManuals2.com

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

### Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on and Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

## System limits

### Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians.

- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, e.g. DSC OFF.
- If the field of view of the camera or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.
- When it is dark outside.

## Lane departure warning

### The concept

Starting at a specific speed, this system alerts you when the vehicle on streets with lane markings is about to leave the lane. This speed, depending on the country version, is between 35 mph/55 km/h and 45 mph/70 km/h.

The steering wheel begins vibrating gently in the event of warnings. The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

### Information

WARNING

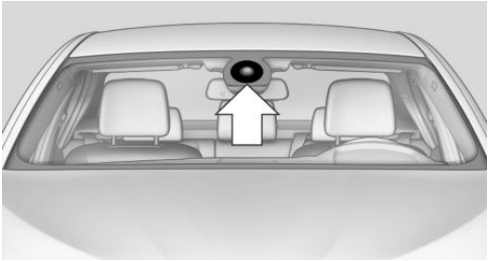
The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess route and traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. In the event of a warning, do not unnecessarily jerk the steering wheel.◀

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

#### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

CarManuals2.com

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The lane departure warning is automatically activated after departure, if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

### Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

▷ The LED goes out.

## Display in the instrument cluster

- ▷ Lines: system is activated.
- ▷ Arrows: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

## Issued warning

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel begins vibrating.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

### End of warning

The warning is canceled in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- ▷ When returning to your own lane.
- ▷ When braking hard.
- ▷ When using the turn signal.

## System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

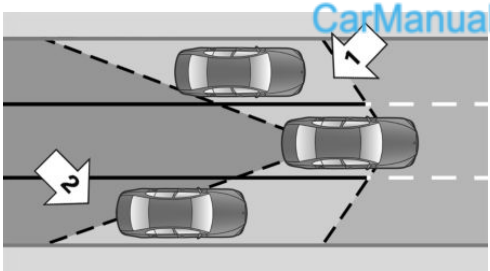
- ▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- ▷ When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- ▷ When the lane markings are covered by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

CarManuals2.com

# Active Blind Spot Detection

## The concept

CarManuals2.com




Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind on the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The lamp in the exterior mirror housing is dimmed.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The lamp in the exterior mirror housing flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

## Information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess visibility and traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

### Radar sensors

The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The Active Blind Spot Detection is automatically activated after departure, if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

### Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

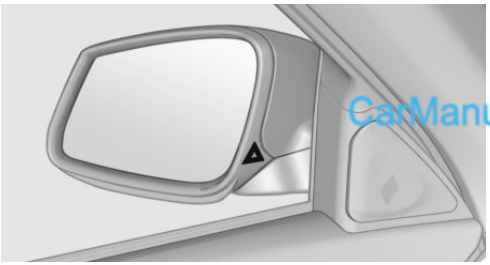
Hold down button:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

▷ The LED goes out.

## Display

### Lamp in the exterior mirror housing



CarManuals2.com

### Information stage

The dimmed lamp in the exterior mirror housing indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

### WARNING

If the turn signal is set while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the lamp in the exterior mirror housing flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the turn signal is switched off, or the other vehicle leaves the critical zone.

### Brief flashing

A brief flashing of the lamp during vehicle unlocking serves as system self-test.

### System limits

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.

▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.

▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.

▷ If the bumper is dirty or iced up, or covered with stickers.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

### For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

▷ NBG009014A.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and

▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

# Brake force display

## The concept

- During normal brake application, the outer brake lights light up.
- During heavy brake application, the inner brake lights light up in addition.

CarManuals2.com

# Driving stability control systems

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Anti-lock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle contains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

CarManuals2.com

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

## Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

## DSC Dynamic Stability Control

### The concept

DSC prevents traction loss in the power wheels when driving off and accelerating.

DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Within the physical limits DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

### Information

Adapt your driving style to the situation, for an appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, not even with DSC.

Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner.

WARNING

When driving with roof load, e.g. with roof-mounted luggage rack, driving safety may not be ensured in driving-critical situations due to the elevated center of gravity. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

DSC OFF button

### Indicator/warning lights

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

## Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

### General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

### Deactivating DSC

Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.

The DSC system is switched off.

The steering and, depending on the equipment, suspension are tuned for sporty driving.

### Activating DSC

Press button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

### Indicator/warning lights

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

# DTC Dynamic Traction Control

## The concept

The DTC system is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions or loose road surfaces, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

Activating the Dynamic Traction Control DTC provides maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

CarManuals2.com

Therefore drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose grounds.
- When driving with snow chains.

## Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

### Activating DTC

Press button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

### Deactivating DTC

Press button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

## Performance Control

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, with a correspondingly sporty driving style, wheels are braked individually. The resulting braking power is simultaneously largely compensated by an engine intervention.

## xDrive

xDrive is the all-wheel-drive system of your vehicle. Concerted action by the xDrive and DSC further optimize traction and driving dynamics. The xDrive all-wheel-drive system variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

### Display on the Control Display

#### Displaying xDrive view

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "xDrive status"

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ With a navigation system: compass display for the driving direction
- ▷ Pitch attitude with degree and percentage
- ▷ Transverse gradient with degree indication
- ▷ Graphic display for the steering

## HDC Hill Descent Control

### The concept

HDC is a downhill driving assistant that automatically controls vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients. Without applying the brakes, the vehicle moves at slightly more than walking speed.

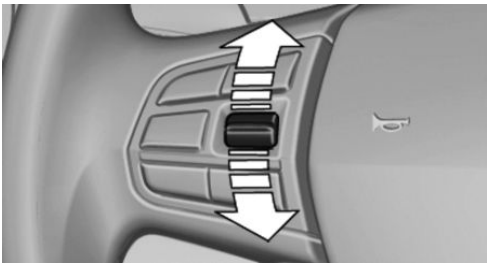
Hill Descent Control can be activated at speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving downhill, the vehicle reduces its speed to approx. walking speed and then keeps its speed constant.

As long as there is active braking, the system is on standby. The system does not brake the vehicle during this time.

Only use HDC in low gears or in selector lever position D or R.

### Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

Specify desired speed in the range from approx. 4 mph/6 km/h to approx. 15 mph/25 km/h using the rocker switch of the cruise control on the steering wheel. Vehicle speed can be changed by lightly accelerating.



- ▷ Press the rocker switch up to the point of resistance: the speed increases gradually.
- ▷ Press up the rocker switch past the point of resistance: the speed increases while the rocker switch is pressed.
- ▷ Press the rocker switch down to the point of resistance: the speed decreases gradually.

CarManuals2.com

▷ Press the rocker switch down past the point of resistance: when driving forward, the speed decreases to approx. 6 mph/10 km/h; when reversing, the speed decreases to approx. 4 mph/6 km/h.

CarManuals2.com

### Activating HDC

Press button; the LED above the button lights up.

### Deactivating HDC

Press button again and the LED goes out. HDC is automatically deactivated above approx. 37 mph/60 km/h.

### Display in the instrument cluster

The selected speed is displayed in the speedometer.

▷ Green: the system is actively braking the vehicle.

▷ Orange: the system is on standby.

### Malfunction

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster. HDC is not available, e.g., due to elevated brake temperatures.

## Dynamic Damping Control

### The concept

This system reduces undesirable vehicle motion when using a dynamic driving style or traveling on uneven road surfaces.

The system enhances driving dynamics and comfort fitting road surface and driving style.

### Programs

The system offers several different programs.

Select the programs via the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 130.

#### SPORT

Consistently sporty control of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

#### SPORT+

Consistently sporty control of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility when driving with limited driving stabilization.

#### COMFORT/ECO PRO

Balanced control of the vehicle.

## Variable sport steering

The variable sport steering increases the steering angle of the front wheels at large steering wheel angles, e.g., in tight curves or when parking. Steering becomes more direct.

It also varies the force required to turn the wheels in accordance with the vehicle speed.

This results in a sporty steering response. In addition, it becomes easier to steer during parking and maneuvering.

# Servotronic

## The concept

CarManuals2.com

The Servotronic varies the steering force required to turn the wheels in accordance with the vehicle speed. At low speeds, the steering force is strongly supported, i. e. during steering, low force is required. As the speed increases, the assistance of the steering force is reduced.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the driving program, so that a direct, sporty feel and/or comfortable steering is conveyed.

# Driving Dynamics Control

## The concept

The Driving Dynamics Control helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Various programs can be selected for this purpose. The Driving Dynamics Control and the DSC OFF buttons can each be used to activate a program.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

## Operating the programs

| Press button | Program |
|---|---|
| | DSC OFF<br>TRACTION |
| | SPORT+<br>SPORT<br>COMFORT<br>ECO PRO |

### Automatic program change

The system may automatically switch to COMFORT in the following situations:

- ▷ Failure of Dynamic Damping Control.
- ▷ Failure of DSC Dynamic Stability Control.
- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
- ▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

### DSC OFF

When DSC OFF, refer to page 127, is active, driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

### TRACTION

When TRACTION is active, the vehicle has maximum traction on loose road surfaces. DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 127, is activated. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

### SPORT+

Sporty driving with optimized suspension and adapted engine control with limited driving stabilization.

Dynamic Traction Control is switched on.

The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

### Activating SPORT+

Press button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

### Automatic program change

When activating cruise control, the program automatically switches to SPORT mode.

### Indicator/warning lights

SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up: Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

## SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the suspension and engine control for greater driving agility with maximum driving stabilization.

The program can be configured to individual specifications. The configuration is stored for the profile currently used.

### Activating SPORT

Press button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Configuring SPORT

When the display is activated on the Control Display, refer to page 132, the SPORT driving mode can be set to individual specifications.

▷ Activating SPORT.

▷ "Configure SPORT"

▷ Configuring the SPORT driving mode.

SPORT can also be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"
2. "SPORT mode"
3. Configure driving mode.

This configuration is retrieved when the SPORT driving mode is activated.

## COMFORT

For a balanced tuning with maximum driving stabilization.

### Activating COMFORT

Press button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

In certain situations, the system automatically changes to the NORMAL program, automatic program change, refer to page 130.

## ECO PRO

ECO PRO, refer to page 184, provides consistent tuning to minimize fuel consumption for maximum range with maximum driving stabilization.

Comfort functions and the engine controller are adjusted.

The program can be configured to individual specifications.

### Activating ECO PRO

Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Configuring ECO PRO

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"

Make the desired settings.

## Displays

### Program selection

Pressing the button displays a list of the selectable programs. Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the list in the instrument cluster can differ from the illustration shown.

CarManuals2.com

### Selected program

The instrument cluster displays the selected program.

### Display on the Control Display

Program changes can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Driving mode info"

## Drive-off assistant

This system supports driving off on inclines. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle load or when a trailer is used, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

CarManuals2.com

# Driving comfort

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function, ACC

### The concept

Use this system to select a desired speed that the vehicle will maintain automatically on clear roads.

To the extent possible, the system automatically adjusts the speed to a slower vehicle ahead of you.

The distance that the vehicle maintains to the vehicle ahead of you can be varied.

For safety reasons, it depends on the speed.

To maintain a certain distance, the system automatically reduces the speed, applies the brakes lightly, or accelerates again if the vehicle ahead begins moving faster.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits. Your own vehicle will brake automatically and then accelerate again.

If the vehicle ahead of you drives away again after a prolonged period, briefly press the accelerator pedal or press the appropriate button to reactivate the system. The vehicle will automatically accelerate.

CarManuals2.com

As soon as the road is clear, the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed.

The speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained uphill if engine power is insufficient.

### General information

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

### Information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can put itself into motion and roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g. with a wheel chock.◀



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

## Overview

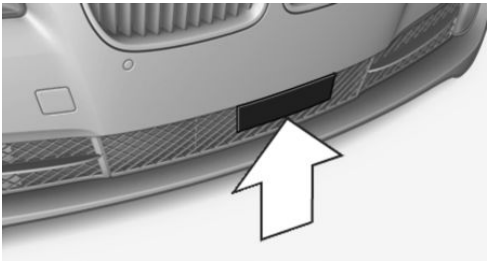
### Buttons on the steering wheel

| Press button | Function |
|---|---|
| | Cruise control on/off, interrupt, refer to page 134 |
| SET | Store, maintain speed, refer to page 135 |
| RES | Resume speed, refer to page 136 |
| | Reduce distance, refer to page 136 |
| | Increase distance, refer to page 136 |
| | Rocker switch:<br>Maintain, store, change speed, refer to page 135 |

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle's series, optional features and country specifications.

### Radar sensor

A radar sensor is located in the front bumper for detecting vehicles on the road ahead of the vehicle.



Always keep radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

### Camera

CarManuals2.com

The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

A dirty or covered area in front of the interior mirror may hinder the detection of vehicles.

If necessary, clean the area in front of the interior mirror, e.g., carefully remove salt residue in the winter.

## Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

### Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster light up and the mark in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be switched on if needed.

### Switch off

To switch off the system while standing, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press button on the steering wheel.

- ▷ If active: press twice.
- ▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

### Interrupting

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the brakes are applied.
- When selector lever position D is disengaged.
- When DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- When DSC is actively controlling stability.
- When SPORT+ is activated with Driving Dynamics Control.
- If the safety belt and the driver's door are opened while the vehicle is standing still.
- If the system has not detected objects for an extended period, e.g., on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- If the detection range of the radar is disrupted, e.g., by dirt or heavy fog.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

## Maintaining, storing, and changing the speed

### Information

WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, e.g. in the following situations:

- When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- Suddenly swerving vehicle onto the own lane.
- When fast approaching standing vehicles.

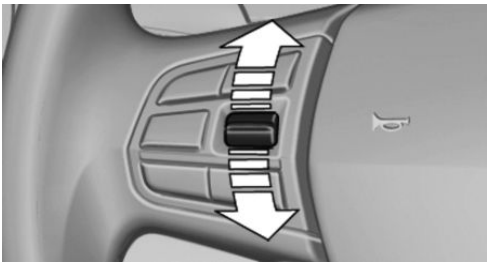
CarManuals2.com

There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

### Maintaining/storing the speed

Press button.

Or:



Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

This is displayed in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster, refer to page 136.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be switched on if needed.

### Changing the speed

Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed

increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

## Distance

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.◀

### Reduce distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance, refer to page 137.

### Increase distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance, refer to page 137.

## Calling up the desired speed and distance

### While driving

RES Press button with the system switched on.

CarManuals2.com

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

▷ When the system is switched off.

▷ When the ignition is switched off.

### While standing

The system brought the vehicle to a complete standstill:

▷ Green marking in the speedometer:

Your vehicle accelerates automatically as soon as the vehicle in the range of the radar sensor moves off.

▷ Speedometer markings turn orange: no automatic driving off.

To accelerate to the desired speed automatically, press the accelerator or press the RES or SET button.

Rolling bars in the distance display indicate that the vehicle detected by the radar sensor has driven off.

The system was paused or your vehicle was brought to a halt actively through stepping on the brake pedal and it is standing behind another vehicle:

1. RES Press button to call up a stored desired speed.
2. Release the brake pedal.
3. Step on the accelerator briefly, or press the RES rocker switch when the vehicle ahead of you drives away.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Desired speed

▷ The marking lights up green: the system is active.

▷ The marking lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.

▷ The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

## Brief status display

Selected desired speed.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

## Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Shown is selected distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

| Distance display | |
|---|---|
| | Distance 1 |
| | Distance 2 |
| | Distance 3 |
| | Distance 4<br>This value is set automatically after the system is switched on. |
| | The system has been interrupted or distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected. |
| | Distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was detected. |

Rolling bars: the detected vehicle has driven away.

ACC is no longer accelerating. To accelerate further, activate ACC by briefly stepping on the accelerator pedal, pressing the RES button or rocker switch.

## Indicator/warning lights

Symbol lights up orange:

A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Symbol flashes orange:

The conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds:

You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

## Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

CarManuals2.com

### Distance information

The symbol is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active under the following circumstances:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control switched off.
- ▷ Display in the Head-up Display selected, refer to page 95.
- ▷ Distance too short.
- ▷ Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

## System limits

### Speed range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

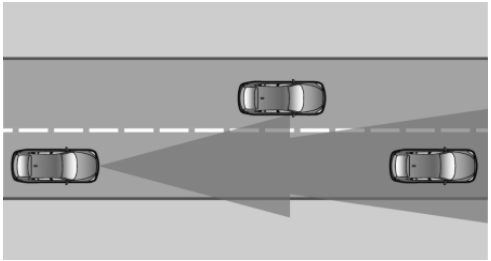
The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h. The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

CarManuals2.com

Comply with the legal speed limit in every situation when using the system.

## Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

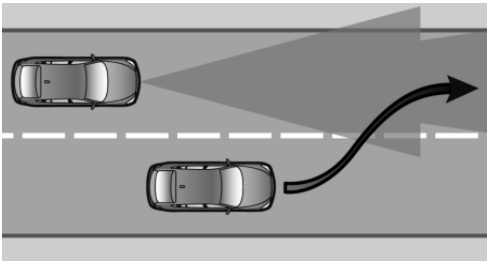
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

## Deceleration

The system also does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians or similar slow-moving road users.
- ▷ For red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.

## Swerving vehicles



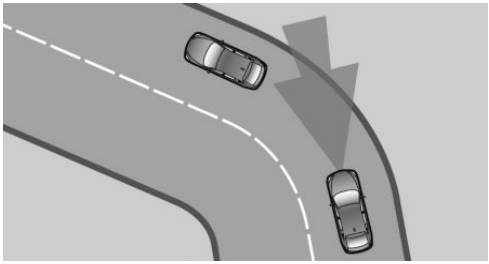
A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

WARNING

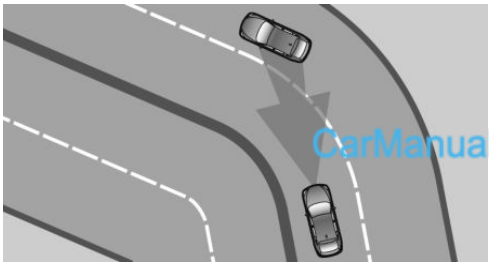
The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

### Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves the system offers only restricted detection where a vehicle ahead of you might be detected late or not at all.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating.

After releasing the gas pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

### Driving away

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep inclines.
- ▷ From behind bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

### Weather

In the event of unfavorable weather and light conditions, e. g. if there is rain, snowfall, slush, fog or glare, this may result in poorer recognition of vehicles as well as short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already detected. Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, e.g. by braking, steering or evading.

### Malfunction

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred during parking, e.g.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

The function for detecting and responding when approaching stationary vehicles may be limited in the following situations:

- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If the camera is malfunctioning or dirty. A Check Control message is displayed.

CarManuals2.com

## Cruise control

### The concept

The system maintains a preset speed via the buttons on the steering wheel. The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking is insufficient.

### General information

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

## Information

WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.◀

## Overview

### Buttons on the steering wheel

| Press button | Function |
|---|---|
| | Cruise control on, off, pause, refer to page 140. |
| SET | Store speed, refer to page 141. |
| RES | Resume speed, refer to page 141. |
| | Rocker switch: change, hold, store speed, refer to page 141. |

## Controls

### Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be switched on if needed.

### Switch off

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

CarManuals2.com

Press button on the steering wheel.

- ▷ If active: press twice.
- ▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

### Interrupting

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the brakes are applied.
- ▷ If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ If the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- ▷ If selector lever position D is disengaged.
- ▷ If DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ When DSC is actively controlling stability.
- ▷ If HDC is activated.
- ▷ When SPORT+ is activated with Driving Dynamics Control.

## Maintaining, storing, and changing the speed

### Information

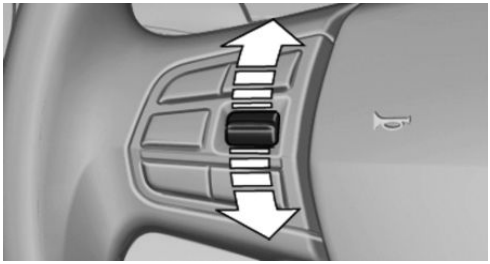
WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

### Maintaining/storing the speed

SET Press button.

Or:



Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

This is displayed in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster, refer to page 141.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be switched on if needed.

### Changing the speed

Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- ▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

### Call up desired speed

RES Press button on the steering wheel.

CarManuals2.com

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Indicator lamp

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

### Desired speed

- ▷ The marking lights up green: the system is active.
- ▷ The marking lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.
- ▷ The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

### Brief status display

Selected desired speed.

CarManuals2.com

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

### Displays in the Head-up Display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

## PDC Park Distance Control

### The concept

PDC is a support when parking. When you slowly approach an object in the rear - or also in the front of the vehicle if the feature is available - then the object is reported through:

- ▷ Signal tones.
- ▷ Visual display.

### General information

Ultrasound sensors in the bumpers measure the distances from objects.

The maneuvering range, depending on the obstacle and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given with the following circumstances:

- ▷ By the front sensors and the two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.
- ▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.
- ▷ When a collision is imminent.

### Information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Due to high speeds when PDC is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC is not yet active.◀

### Overview

#### With front PDC: button in vehicle

PDC Park Distance Control

#### Ultrasound sensors

PDC sensors on the vehicle.

### Functional requirements

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, e.g., with stickers, bicycle racks.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.

To clean: when using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

PDC switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

  The rearview camera also switches on.
- ▷ If equipped with front PDC: when obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h.

You may turn off automatic activation:

1. "Settings"
2. "Parking"
3. Select setting.

   Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

### With front PDC: switching on/off manually

Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged by pressing the button.

## Display

### Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E. g. if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 in/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

With front PDC: if objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off, when selector lever position P is engaged on vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

### Volume

The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.

1. "Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. "PDC"
5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
6. Press the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

CarManuals2.com

### Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC:

"Rear view camera"

## System limits

### Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g. coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g. from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

### False warnings

PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- ▷ In heavy rain.
- ▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- ▷ When sensors are covered in snow.
- ▷ On rough road surfaces.
- ▷ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- ▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- ▷ In automatic car washes.
- ▷ Through heavy pollution.
- ▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The range of the sensors is shown as a shaded area on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

# Surround View

## The concept

Surround View comprises various camera assistance systems that help the driver when parking, maneuvering, and at complex exits and intersections.

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Rearview camera, refer to page 144.
- ▷ Top View, refer to page 147.
- ▷ Side View, refer to page 149.

# Rearview camera

## The concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

## Information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic condi-

tions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

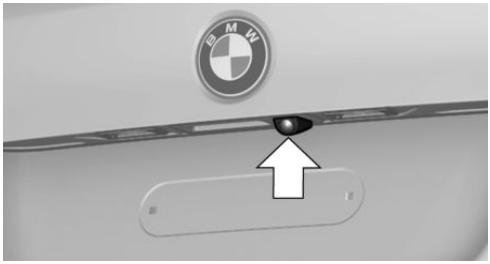
CarManuals2.com

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

Rearview camera

### Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the camera lens, refer to page 234.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

With the engine running, engage lever in position P R.

### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

### Switching on/off manually

Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged by pressing the button.

### Switching the view via iDrive

With PDC activated or Top View switched on:

"Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

## Display on the Control Display

### Functional requirement

- ▷ The rearview camera is switched on.
- ▷ The tailgate is fully closed.

### Activating assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

- ▷ Parking aid lines

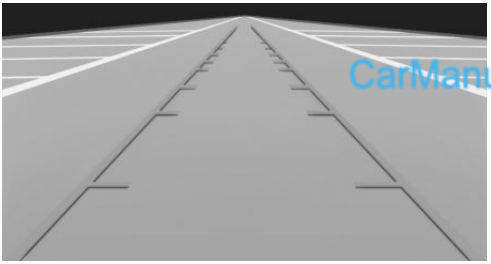
  "Parking aid lines"

  Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
- ▷ Obstacle marking

  "Obstacle marking"

  Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

## Pathway lines

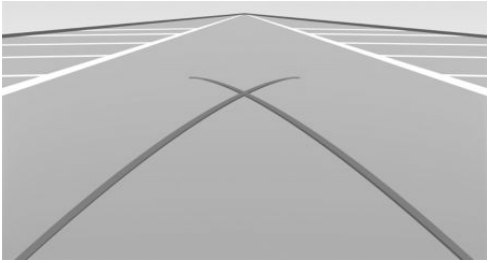


Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

## Turning circle lines



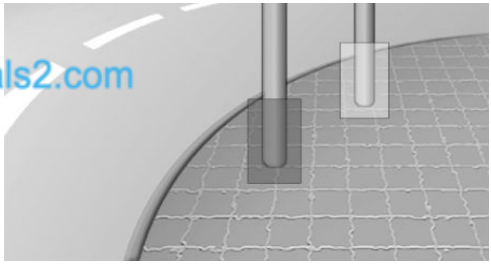
Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the rearview camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

## Obstacle marking

CarManuals2.com



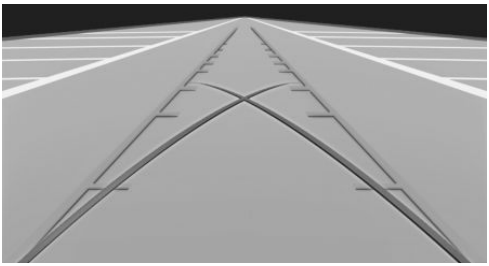
Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the PDC sensors and, when respectively equipped, detected by the rearview camera.

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

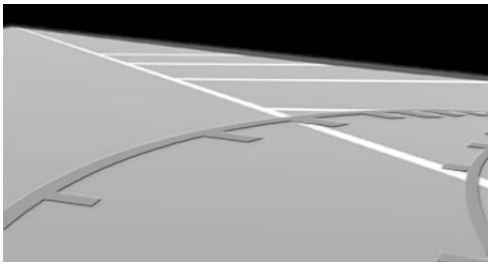
Their colored margins of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC.

## Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.



## Display settings

### Brightness

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ☼ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

### Contrast

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ◐ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

## System limits

### Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Assistance functions also take into account data of the PDC.

Follow instructions in the PDC chapter, refer to page 142.

The objects displayed on the Control Display under certain circumstances are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

# Top View

## The concept

CarManuals2.com

Top View provides assistance in parking and maneuvering. The area around the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

## General information

The image is captured by two cameras integrated in the exterior mirrors, by the rear-view camera and a camera on the front of the vehicle.

The range is no more than approx. 6.5 ft/2 m to the side, front and rear.

Obstacles within this range are thus displayed early on the Control Display.

## Information

WARNING

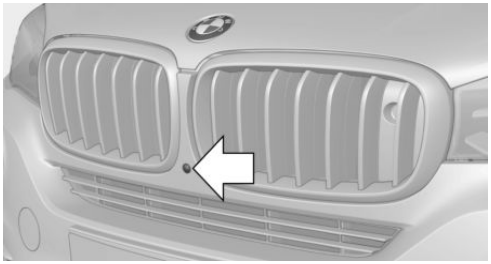
The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

## Overview

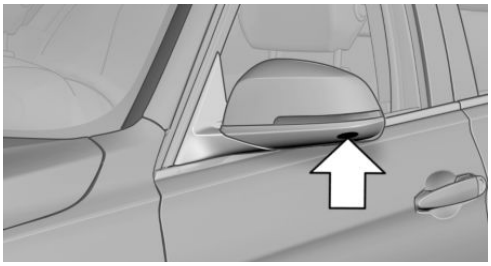
### Button in the vehicle

Top View

### Cameras



Front camera



The lenses of the Top View cameras are located at the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the camera lenses, refer to page 234.

## Functional requirements

Top View can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the tailgate open.
- ▷ With an exterior mirror folded in.
- ▷ In poor light.

The unavailable camera range is depicted by shading.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

With the engine running, engage lever in position P R.

The rearview camera image is displayed. To switch to the Top View:

"Rear view camera"

CarManuals2.com

### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

### Switching on/off manually

Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

Top View is displayed.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged by pressing the button.

## Display

### Display on the Control Display

The area surrounding the vehicle can be displayed on the Control Display.

The display appears as soon as Top View is activated.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, it is possible to switch to top view:

"Rear view camera"

### Brightness

With Top View switched on:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

### Contrast

With Top View switched on:

1. Select the symbol.

2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

### Displaying the turning radius and pathway lines

▷ The static, red turning radius line shows the space needed to the side of the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned all the way.

▷ The variable, green pathway line assists you in assessing the amount of space actually needed to the side of the vehicle.

The lane line depends on the engaged gear and the current steering angle. The track line is continuously adjusted for the steering wheel movement.

"Parking aid lines"

Turning circle and pathway lines are displayed.

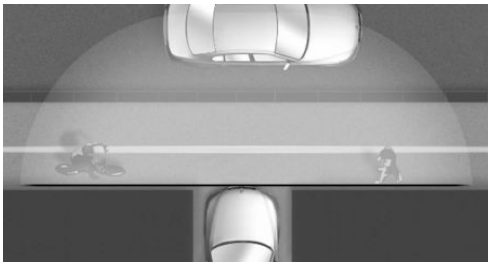
### System limits

A Check Control message is displayed when a camera is not working.

CarManuals2.com

## Side View

### The concept



Side View provides an early look at cross traffic at blind driveways and intersections. Road users concealed by obstacles to the left and right of the vehicle can only be detected relatively late from the driver's seat. To improve the viewing, each camera, front and rear on the vehicle, detects the traffic area on the side.

Which camera is active is shown on the top edge of the screen.

### Information

The images of the cameras are displayed, depending on the gear selected, on the Control Display.

WARNING

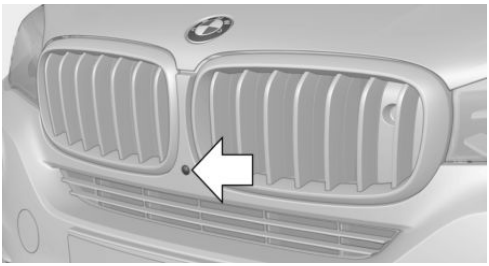
The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◂

### Overview

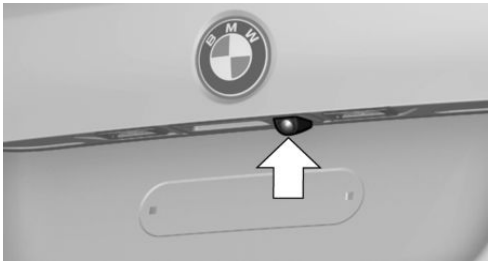
#### Button in the vehicle

Side View

#### Cameras



Front camera



Rear camera

Two cameras are used for the detection.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the camera lenses, refer to page 234.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on/off manually

Press button.

Depending on the transmission position, the picture of the front or rear camera is displayed.

### Switching off automatically

By switching into a different function or when changing gears.

Front Side View: when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

## Display

### General information

The traffic area in front of or behind the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

### Brightness

With the Side View switched on:

1. ☼ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

### Contrast

With the Side View switched on:

1. ◐ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

## Warning of crossing traffic

### The concept

When an object approaching from the side is detected by the front or rear camera, this is depicted by a symbol in the Side View display.

### Requirements

- ▷ Side View switched on.
- ▷ Your vehicle moves no faster than walking speed.
- ▷ To detect approaching objects, sufficient brightness, e.g., daylight is necessary.

### Display

The yellow symbol is displayed if an approaching vehicle is detected by the camera.

A gray symbol is displayed if crossing traffic cannot be detected.

### System limits

In the following situations, the warning about crossing traffic may be limited:

- ▷ In poor lighting or visibility conditions.
- ▷ If the camera is soiled or covered.

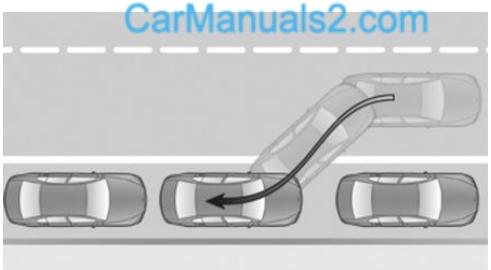
## System limits

The objects displayed on the Control Display under certain circumstances are closer than they appear. Therefore, do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

The viewing angle is approx. 180°.

# Parking assistant

## The concept




This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

When parking, also take note of the visual and acoustic information and instructions issued by the PDC, the parking assistant and the rear-view camera and react accordingly.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 142.

## Information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◂

CAUTION

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is risk of property damage. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◂

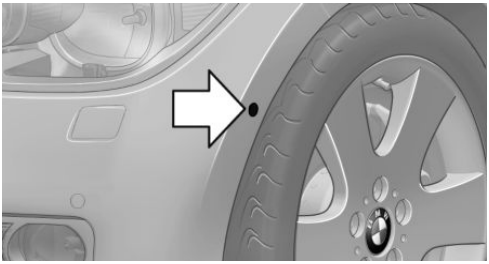
An engine that has been switched off by the Auto Start Stop function is restarted automatically when the parking assistant is activated.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle

Parking assistant

### Ultrasound sensors



The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the side of the vehicle.

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- ▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.
- ▷ Do not put stickers over sensors.

## Requirements

### For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.

- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

### Suitable parking space

- Gaps behind an object that has a min. length of 5 ft/1.5 m.
- Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 3.3 ft/1.0 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

### Regarding the parking procedure

- Doors and tailgate closed.
- Parking brake released.
- When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set where applicable.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on with the button

Press button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

### Switching on with the reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

To activate: "Parking Assistant"

### Switch off

The system can be deactivated as follows:

- Press button.
- Switch off the ignition.

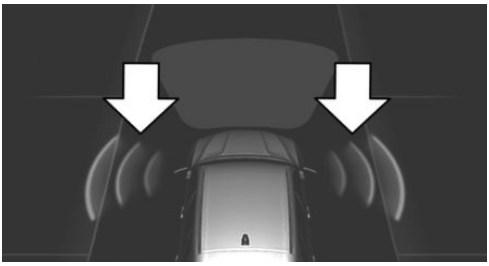
CarManuals2.com

## Display on the Control Display

### System activated/deactivated

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Gray: the system is not available.<br>White: the system is available but not activated. |
| | The system is activated. |

### System status



- Colored symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle illustrated. Parking assistant is activated and search for parking space active.
- Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.
- The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.
- Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

## Parking using the parking assistant

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively interfere in the respective situations.◀

1. Switch on the parking assistant and activate it if needed.

   The status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

   The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering wheel move.

   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the Control Display.

3. Adjust the parking position yourself if needed.

CarManuals2.com

### Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- ▷ "Parking Assistant" Select the symbol on the Control Display.
- ▷ Press button.

### Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or if he takes over steering.
- ▷ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the Control Display.
- ▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
- ▷ Possible on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome, such as curbs.
- ▷ When there are obstacles that suddenly arise.
- ▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC displays clearances that are too small.
- ▷ If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- ▷ When switching to another function on the Control Display.

A Check Control message is displayed.

### Resume

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued if needed.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display to do this.

## System limits

### No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.

### Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.

- For persons with certain clothing, e.g. coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g. from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.

CarManuals2.com

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

It can happen that parking spaces are detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces are not detected.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked.

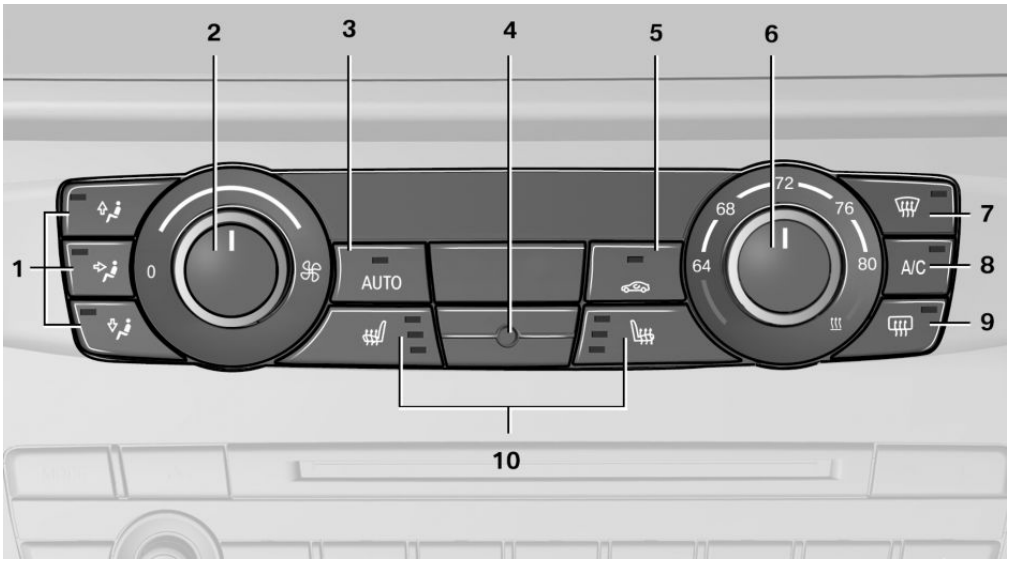
# Climate control

## Vehicle features and options

CarManuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Automatic climate control




1 Vent settings
2 Air flow
3 AUTO program
4 Interior temperature sensor — always keep clear
5 Recirculated-air mode
6 Temperature
7 Defrosts windows and removes condensation
8 Cooling function
9 Rear window defroster
10 Seat heating 55

# Climate control functions in detail

## Switching the system on/off

### Switching on

Set any air volume.

The AUTO program can also be switched on directly via the AUTO button.

### Switch off

Turn the rotary switch for the air volume, refer to page 157, to 0. The blower and automatic climate control are turned off entirely.

## Temperature

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

CarManuals2.com

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

## Cooling function

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Press button.

The air will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and side windows may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 179, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

## AUTO program

Press button.

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 156, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

## Recirculated-air mode

You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

Recirculated air mode switches off automatically at low external temperatures after a certain amount of time in order to avoid window fogging.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

## Air flow, manual

Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.

The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

## Manual air distribution

Press buttons repeatedly to select a program:

▷ Windows.

▷ Upper body region.

▷ Footwell.

You may combine these programs as needed.

## Defrosts windows and removes condensation

Press button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

If the windows are fogged over, you can also switch on the cooling function to dehumidify the air.

## Rear window defroster

Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

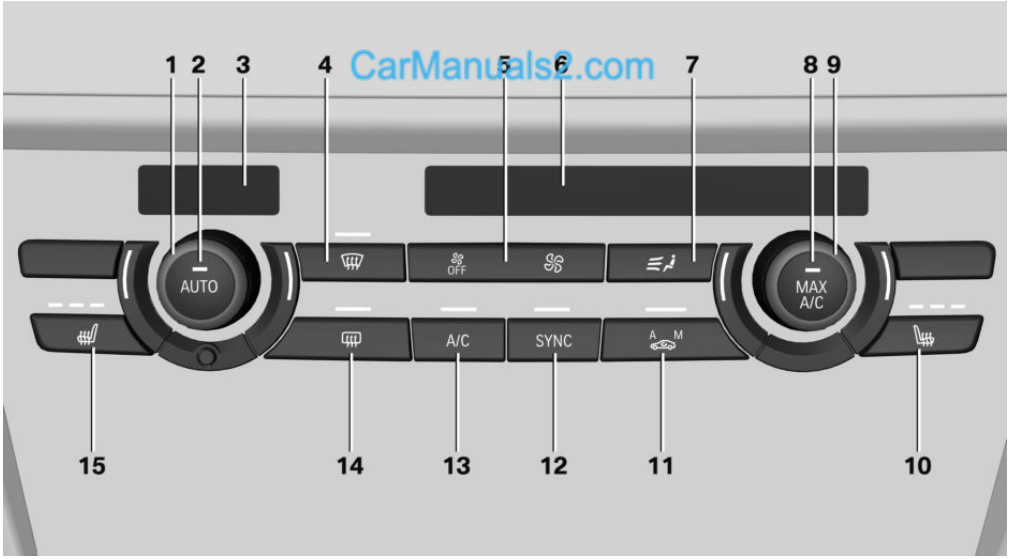
## Microfilter

In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 215, of your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

# Automatic climate control with enhanced features



CarManuals2.com

1 Temperature, left
2 AUTO program
3 Display
4 Remove ice and condensation
5 Air flow, residual heat
6 Display
7 Vent settings
8 Maximum cooling
9 Temperature, right
10 Seat heating, right 55
11 Recirculated-air mode
12 SYNC program
13 Cooling function
14 Rear window defroster
15 Seat heating, left 55

## Climate control functions in detail

### Switching the system on/off

#### Switching on

Press any button except:

- ▷ SYNC program.
- ▷ Rear window defroster.
- ▷ Left side of Air volume button.
- ▷ Seat heating.

#### Switch off

Press and hold the left button until the control switches off.

### Temperature

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed

by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

## Cooling function

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Press button.

The air will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and side windows may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 179, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

## Maximum cooling

Press button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The function is available above an external temperature of approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

## AUTO program

Press button.

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

CarManuals2.com

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity program and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 159, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

### Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

## Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

Recirculated air mode switches off automatically at low external temperatures after a certain amount of time in order to avoid window fogging.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

## Air flow, manual

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

## Manual air distribution

Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and footwell.
- ▷ Windows: driver's side only.
- ▷ Windows and upper body region.

If the windows are fogged over, press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

## SYNC program

Press button.

The current setting of the temperature on the driver's side is transferred to the front passenger side.

The program is switched off if the setting on the front passenger side is changed.

## Defrosts windows and removes condensation

Press button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

For this purpose, point the side vents onto the side windows as needed.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

If the windows are fogged over, you can also switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

## Rear window defroster

Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

## Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

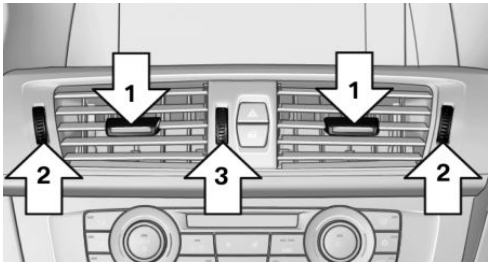
In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 215, of your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

# Ventilation

## Front ventilation




- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 2.
- Thumbwheel to vary the temperature in the upper body region, arrow 3.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.

  The set interior temperature for the driver and passenger are not changed.

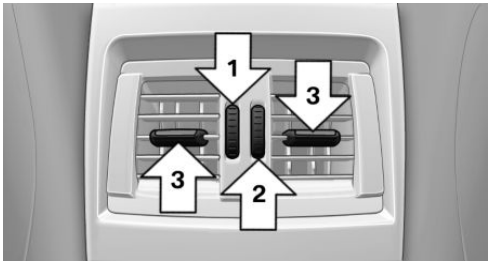
### Adjusting the ventilation

- Ventilation for cooling:

  Direct vent in your direction when vehicle's interior is too hot.
- Draft-free ventilation:

  Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.

## Ventilation in the rear




- Thumbwheel for continuous opening and closing of the vents, arrow 1.
- Thumbwheel to vary the temperature, arrow 2.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.
- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 3.

# Parked-car ventilation

## The concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.

Operation can be performed via iDrive.

## Functional requirements

### Parked-car ventilation

- Using the preset reel-on time or when operated directly: any external temperature.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

## Switching on/off directly

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate comf. ventilation"

CarManuals2.com

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

## Preselecting the reel-on time

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

## Activating the reel-on time

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate timer 1" or "Activate timer 2"

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the reel-on time is activated.

CarManuals2.com

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to be reactivated.

# Interior equipment

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Universal Integrated Remote Control

### The concept

The universal garage door opener can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The universal garage door opener replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

CarManuals2.com

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

### Information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g. the garage door, using the universal garage door opener. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◀

### Compatibility

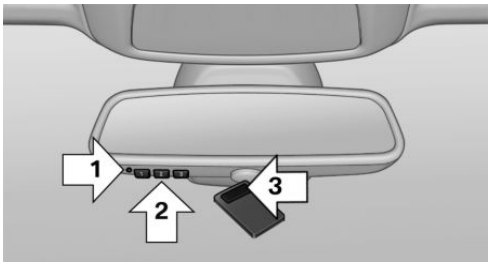
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the universal garage door opener.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### Controls on the interior rearview mirror




- ▷ LED, arrow 1.
- ▷ Buttons, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

### Programming

#### General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This

erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

### Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code system.

CarManuals2.com

Read the system's operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior rearview mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code system, the universal garage door opener and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

To synchronize:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

### Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

### Controls

CarManuals2.com

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g. the garage door, using the universal garage door opener. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◂

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

### Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored functions are deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

## Sun visor

### Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

### Glare shield from the side

#### Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Unhook it from the holder and swing it to the side.
3. Move it back to the desired position.

#### Folding up

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

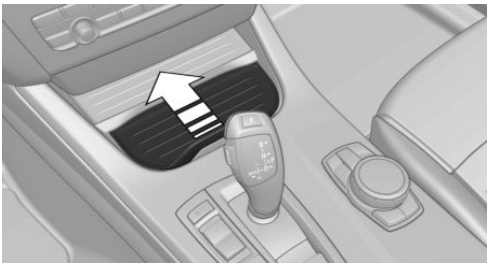
### Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

## Ashtray/cigarette lighter

### Ashtray

#### Opening



Slide the cover forward.

The ashtray can be inserted in the cupholder.

### Emptying

Take out the insert.

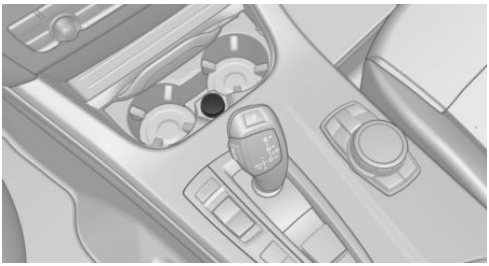
## Lighter

WARNING

Contact with hot heating elements or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is risk of fire and injuries. Hold the cigarette lighter on its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and do not burn themselves, e.g. by carrying the remote control along when exiting the vehicle.◀

CAUTION

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀



The cigarette lighter is located in the center console.

Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

# Connecting electrical devices

## Information

CAUTION

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12V on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

CAUTION

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

## Sockets

### General information

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

### Information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

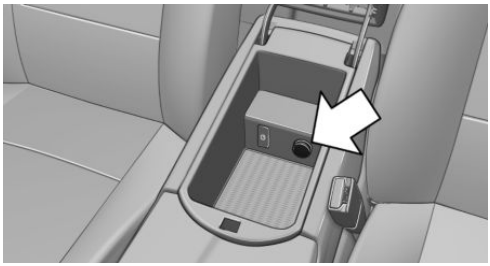
### Front center console

Slide the cover forward.

CarManuals2.com

Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

### Center armrest

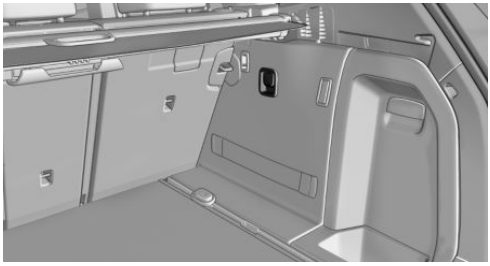


Remove the cover.

### Rear center console

Remove the cover.

### In the trunk



The socket is located on the right side in the trunk.

## USB interface for data transfer

### The concept

Connection for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g.:

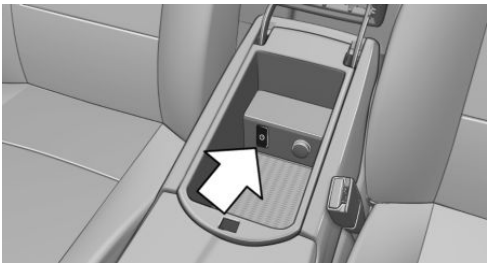
- ▷ Personal Profile settings, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Importing Trips.

### Information

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lights to the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard drives.
- ▷ Do not use the USB interface for recharging external devices.

### With telephone: overview



The USB interface is located in the center armrest.

# Cargo area

## Cargo cover

### Information

WARNING

Loose objects in the car's interior can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries. Secure loose objects in the car's interior.◀

### General information

The cargo cover is in two parts.

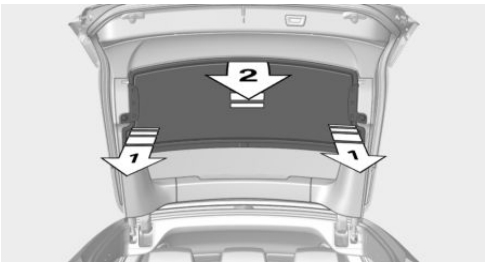
This can be removed to load bulky luggage.

### Removing

#### Cargo cover in rear window

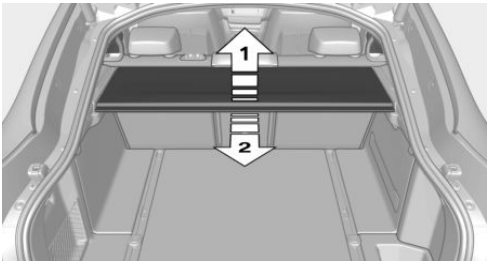
1. Pull the cargo cover with both hands by the outer edges towards the rear, arrows 1, to disengage it from the catches.

CarManuals2.com




2. Push the cargo cover upwards, arrow 2, and remove it.

#### Cargo cover in the trunk




Push the cargo cover upwards, arrow 1, until it disengages from the catches and then pull it towards the front, arrow 2.

### Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to reinstall. The cargo covers must snap audibly into place on their respective holders.

## Enlarging the trunk

### General information

The trunk can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The sides and the middle section can be folded down separately.

### Information

WARNING

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest is clear prior to folding down.◀

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests

and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

CarManuals2.com

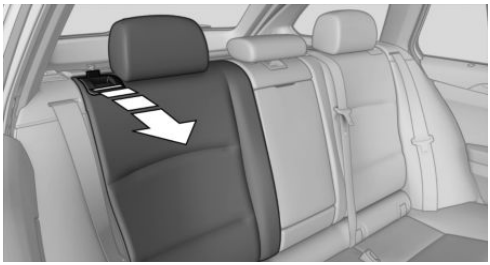
WARNING

With an unlocked backrest, an unsecured load can be thrown into the car's interior, e.g. in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the backrest engages into the locking after folding it back.◀

WARNING

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear backrest.◀

### Folding down the sides



Reach into the recess and pull forward.

### Folding down the middle section

Fold down the center armrest and pull on the loop.

## Ski and snowboard bag

### General information

The ski and snowboard bag is contained in a protective jacket in the trunk.

Follow the installation and operation instructions included in the protective jacket.

# Storage compartments

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Information

WARNING

Loose objects in the car's interior can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries. Secure loose objects in the car's interior.◀

CAUTION

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.◀

## Storage compartments

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side, refer to page 170.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the front center armrest, refer to page 171.
- ▷ Compartments in the doors, refer to page 171.
- ▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.
- ▷ Net in the front passenger footwell.

## Glove compartment

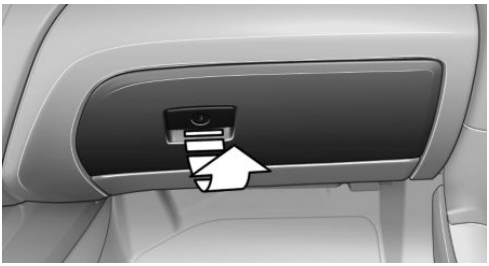
### Front passenger side

#### Information

WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

#### Opening



Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

#### Closing

Fold cover closed.

#### Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove compartment.

CarManuals2.com

After the glove compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed over, such as at a hotel, without the integrated key.

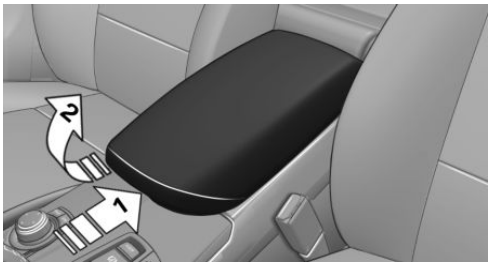
# Compartments in the doors

WARNING

Breakable object, e.g. glass bottle, can break in the event of an accident. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is risk of injuries. Do not stow any breakable objects in the car's interior.◀

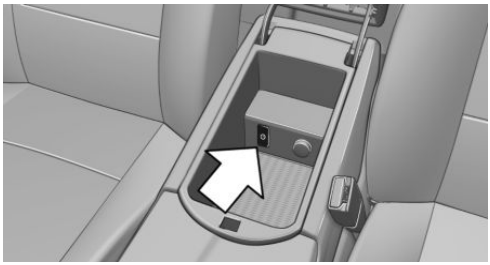
# Center armrest

## Opening




Press button, arrow 1, and fold the center arm rest up, arrow 2.

## Connection for an external audio device



An external audio device, e.g., an MP3 player, can be connected via the AUX-IN port in the center armrest.

CarManuals2.com

# Cupholders

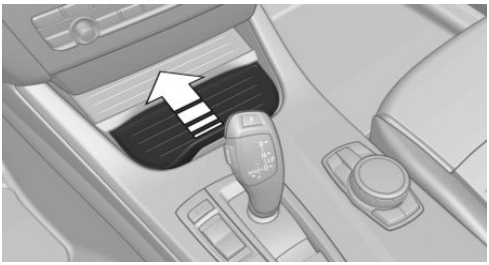
## Information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injuries in the event of an accident. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder.◀

## Front

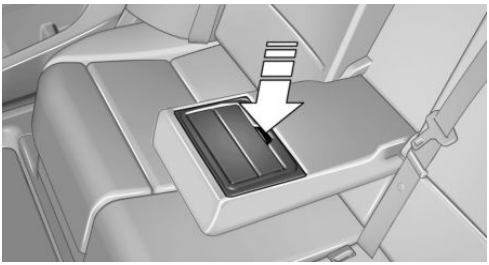
In the center console.



Slide the cover forward.

## Rear

In the center armrest.



Pull the center armrest forward at the strap.

To open: press the button.

To close: push both covers back in, one after the other.

CAUTION

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is risk of property damage. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.◂

## Clothes hooks

WARNING

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is risk of an accident. When suspending clothing articles from the hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.◂

WARNING

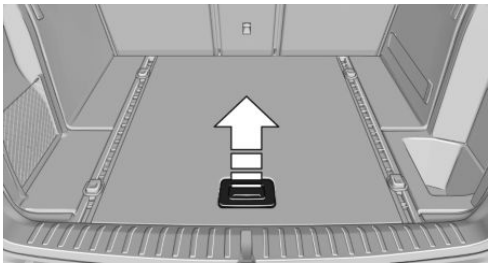
Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g. clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.◂

The clothes hooks are located in the rear.

CarManuals2.com

## Storage compartments in the trunk

### Storage space under cargo floor panel



Fold up the cargo floor panel. The storage space under the cargo floor panel is subdivided.

Two additional subdividers can be inserted to partition it further.

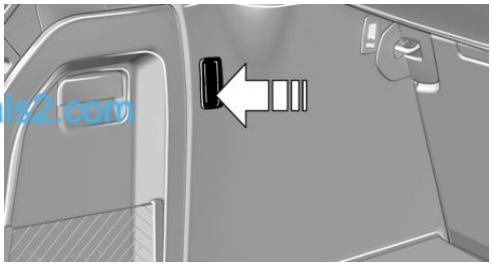
### Storage compartment on the right side

A waterproof storage compartment is available on the right side of the trunk.

### Multi-function hook

WARNING

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g. shopping bags, from the multifunction hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the trunk if it has been appropriately secured.◂



Depending on the installed equipment version, there are one or two multi-function hooks in the cargo area.

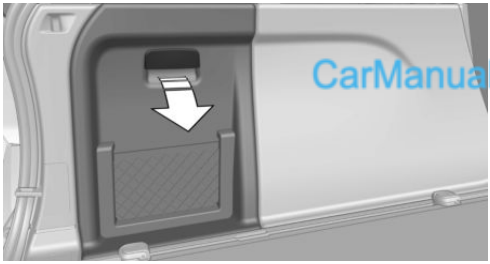
### Retaining strap

A retaining strap is available on the right side trim for fastening small objects.

### Net

Smaller objects can be stored in the net on the left side of the trunk.

## Left side storage compartment



CarManuals2.com

Pull the handle.

## Lashing eyes in the cargo area

To secure the cargo, refer to page 181, there are lashing eyes in the cargo area.

## Lashing eyes in the trunk with rail

To secure the cargo, refer to page 181, there are lashing eyes in the cargo area.

## Reversible floor panel

The bottom of the cargo floor panel is coated with a water- and dirt-resistant finish.

Fold the cargo floor panel up, remove and turn it over.

## Cargo net, FlexNet

To secure the cargo, refer to page 181, the flexible cargo net can also be used.

## Folding box

A folding box is located under the trunk floor.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

CarManuals2.com

# Driving tips

This chapter provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating modes.

# Things to remember when driving

## Vehicle features and options

Carmanuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Breaking-in period

### General information

Moving parts need time to adjust to one another (break-in time).

The following instructions will help accomplish a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 80.

### Engine, transmission, and axle drive

#### Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- ▷ For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

#### From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

### Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

### Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimal performance between brake discs and brake pads. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

### Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

## Driving on poor roads

The vehicle combines all-wheel drive with the advantages of a normal automobile.

CAUTION

Objects in unpaved areas, e.g. stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is risk of property damage. Do not drive on unpaved terrain.◀

For your own safety, for the safety of passengers and of the vehicle, heed the following points:

- ▷ Become familiar with the vehicle before starting a trip; do not take risks in driving.
- ▷ Adjust the speed to the road surface conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road surface, the slower the speed should be.
- ▷ When driving on steep uphill or downhill grades: add engine oil and coolant up to near the MAX mark. Uphill and downhill

grades can be traveled up to no more than 50 %.

- ▷ On steep downhill grades, use Hill Descent Control HDC, refer to page 128.

  Starting out is possible on uphill grades up to 30 %. The permissible side tilt is 30 %.

- ▷ Avoid that the chassis bottom coming in contact with the ground.

  The ground clearance is no more than 7.8 inches/20 cm and can vary according to the vehicle's load.

- ▷ When wheels continue to spin, depress the accelerator so that driving stability control systems can distribute the driving force to the wheels. Activate DTC Dynamic Traction Control if available.

### After a trip on poor roads

After a trip on poor roads, check wheels and tires for damage to maintain driving safety. Clear heavy soiling from the body.

## General driving notes

### Closing the tailgate

WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open.◂

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

CarManuals2.com

### Hot exhaust system

WARNING

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, e.g. caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage.

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.◂

### Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

WARNING

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the send operations of mobile phones. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual disturbance and deflect the radiation from the car's interior.◂

### Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

### Driving through water

CAUTION

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the

transmission. There is risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.◀

Drive though calm water only and only if it is not deeper than 19.6 inches/50 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

## Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations needed.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can cause functional problems. However, this has no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

### Objects in the movement area around pedals and floor area

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g. for cleaning.◀

### Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, press brake pedal ever so gently every few miles.

CarManuals2.com

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

### Hills

WARNING

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.◀

WARNING

In idle or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions are restricted or not available anymore, e.g. braking effect of the engine or braking force and steering support. There is risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle or with the engine switched off.◀

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking efforts. Otherwise the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

### Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion will built up when the maximum pressure applied to the brake pads during braking is not reached - thus discs don't get cleaned.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally that cannot be corrected.

## Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops collecting underneath the vehicle.

These traces of water under the vehicle are normal.

CarManuals2.com

# Loading

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Information

WARNING

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally, and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. There is risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.◀

CAUTION

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.◀

WARNING

Loose objects in the car's interior can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries. Secure loose objects in the car's interior.◀

## Determining the load limit

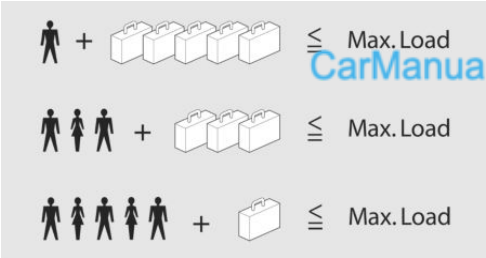
1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard:
   ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

   For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

CarManuals2.com

## Load




CarManuals2.com

The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

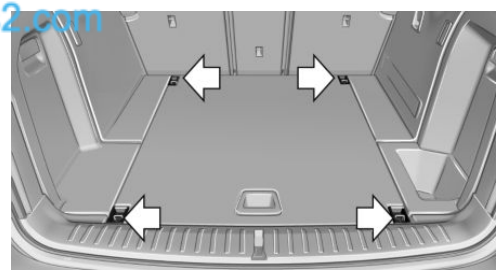
The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

## Stowing cargo

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.

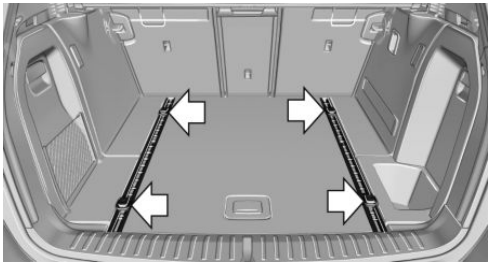
## Securing cargo

### Lashing eyes in the cargo area

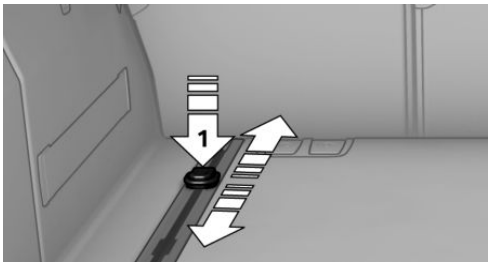


To secure the cargo there are four lashing eyes in the cargo area.

### Lashing eyes in the trunk with rails



To secure the cargo there are four movable lashing eyes in the cargo area.

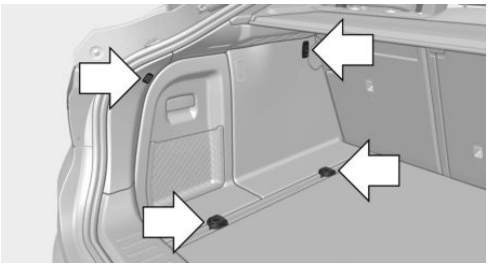



To slide the lashing eyes, press the button, arrow 1. Make sure that the lashing eyes latch at the new position.

The lashing eyes at the openings in the rails can be removed.

## Cargo net, FlexNet

The flexible cargo net is hooked into eyes and secures the cargo in the cargo area. The storage net can be attached to the following eyes:



- ▷ Lashing eyes in the rails.
- ▷ Eyes on the trunk wall.

The eyes are located on both sides of the trunk.

## Securing cargo

WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is risk of injuries. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.◂

- ▷ Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps or with a cargo net or draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps.

  Cargo straps, cargo netting, retaining straps or draw straps on the lashing eyes in the trunk.

## Attachment to the rack

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

## Mounting

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

## Loading

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., tie with ratchet straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

# Roof-mounted luggage rack

## Information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

CarManuals2.com

# Saving fuel

## Vehicle features and options

CarManuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## General information

Your vehicle contains advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

## Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

## Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

## Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and thereby reduces the range.

## Tires

### General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, e.g., tire size may influence fuel consumption.

### Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

## Drive away immediately

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

## Look well ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

## Avoid high engine speeds

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle moving. Starting with the 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

If necessary, observe the gear shift indicator of the vehicle, refer to page 89.

## Use coasting

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

## Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

### Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of your vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

CarManuals2.com

## Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and reduce the range, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

The ECO PRO driving program supports the energy conserving use of comfort features. These functions are automatically deactivated partially or completely.

## Have maintenance carried out

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW dealer's service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 215.

## ECO PRO

### The concept

ECO PRO supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, e. g. the climate control output, are adjusted.

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive instructions are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

## Overview

The system includes the following EfficientDynamics functions and displays:

- ▷ ECO PRO bonus range, refer to page 185.
- ▷ ECO PRO tips driving instruction, refer to page 186
- ▷ ECO PRO climate control, refer to page 185.
- ▷ ECO PRO coasting driving status, refer to page 187.

## Activate ECO PRO

Press button repeatedly until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

CarManuals2.com

## Configuring ECO PRO

### Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"
3. Configure the program.

### Via the iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "ECO PRO mode"

or

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure ECO PRO"

Configure the program.

### ECO PRO Tip

- ▷ "Tip at:":

  Adjust the ECO PRO speed.
- ▷ "ECO PRO speed warning":

  The output is reduced once the set ECO PRO speed is reached.

### Coasting

Fuel-efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and Coasting, refer to page 187, with the engine idling.

This function is only available in ECO PRO mode.

### ECO PRO climate control

"ECO PRO climate control"

Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient.

By making a slight change to the set temperature, or slowly adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the car's interior, fuel consumption can be economized.

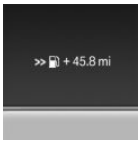
The mirror heating is made available when outside temperatures are very cold.

### ECO PRO potential

Shows potential savings with the current settings in percentages.

## Display in the instrument cluster

### ECO PRO bonus range




An adjusted driving style helps you extend your driving range.

This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

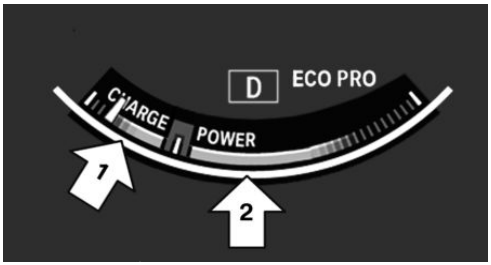
The bonus range is shown in the range display.

The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

## Efficiency display

Display in the instrument cluster

Display in the instrument cluster with extended range




A mark in the efficiency display informs about the current driving style.

Mark in the area of arrow 1: display of the energy recovered by coasting or when braking.

Mark in the area of arrow 2: display when accelerating.

Your driving style's efficiency is shown by the bar's color:

- ▷ Blue display: efficient driving style as long as the mark moves within the blue range.
- ▷ Gray display: adjust driving style, e. g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.

The display switches to blue as soon as all conditions for fuel-efficiency-optimized driving are met.

## ECO PRO tip, driving tip

The arrow indicates that the driving style can be adjusted to be more fuel efficient by backing off the accelerator for instance.

## Information

The efficiency display and ECO PRO tips in the instrument cluster appear when the ECO PRO display is activated.

Activating driving style and ECO PRO tips:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "ECO PRO Info"

## ECO PRO tip, symbols

An additional symbol and text instructions are displayed.

| Symbol | Measure |
|---|---|
| | For efficient driving back off the accelerator or delay accelerating to allow time to assess road conditions. |
| | Reduce speed to the selected ECO PRO speed. |
| | Steptronic transmission: shift from M/S to D. |

# Indications on the Control Display

## EfficientDynamics

Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed while driving.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "EfficientDynamics"

CarManuals2.com

## Displaying fuel consumption history

The average fuel consumption can be displayed within an adjustable time frame.

Vertical bars show consumption for the selected time frame.

Trip interruptions are represented below the bar on the time axis.

CarManuals2.com

"Consumption history"

### Adjusting fuel consumption history time frame

Select the symbol.

### Resetting fuel consumption history

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reset consumption history"

### Displaying EfficientDynamics info

The current efficiency can be displayed.

"EfficientDynamics info"

The following systems are displayed:

- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Energy recovery.
- ▷ Climate control output.
- ▷ Coasting.

### Display ECO PRO tips

"ECO PRO tips"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## Coasting

### The concept

The system helps to conserve fuel.

To do this, under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission when selector lever position D is set. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

As soon as you step on the brake or accelerator pedal, the engine is automatically coupled again.

### Information

Coasting is a component of the ECO PRO, refer to page 184, driving mode.

Coasting is automatically activated when ECO PRO mode is called via the Driving Dynamics Control.

The function is available in a certain speed range.

A proactively driving style helps the driver to use the function as often as possible and supports the fuel-conserving effect of coasting.

### Safety mode

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

- ▷ DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- ▷ Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.
- ▷ Cruise control activated.

### Functional requirements

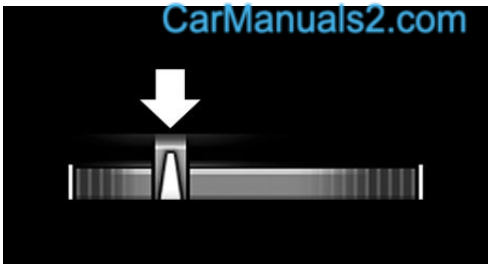
In ECO PRO mode, this function is available in a speed range from approximately 30 mph, approx. 50 km/h to 100 mph, approx. 160 km/h, if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.

The driving status Coast can be influenced with the shift paddles.

## Display

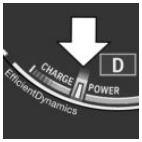
### Display in the instrument cluster




The mark in the efficiency display is backlit in blue and is located at the zero point. The tachometer approximately indicates idle speed.

The coasting point indicator is illuminated at the zero point during coasting.

### Display in the instrument cluster with extended range

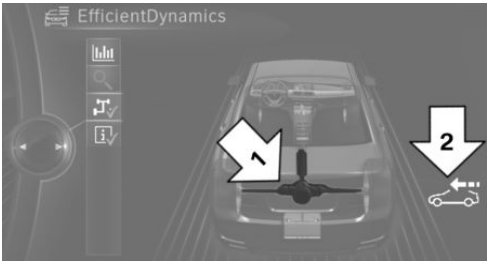



The mark in the efficiency display below the tachometer is backlit in blue and is located at the zero point. The tachometer approximately indicates idle speed.

The coasting point indicator is illuminated at the zero point during coasting.

### Indications on the Control Display

The Coasting driving condition is displayed in EfficientDynamics Info while this driving mode is active.




Color code blue, arrow 1, and symbol, arrow 2: driving condition Coasting.

### Displaying EfficientDynamics info

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "EfficientDynamics"
3. "EfficientDynamics info"

## Deactivating the system manually

The function can be deactivated in the Configure ECO PRO, refer to page 185, menu, e.g., to use the braking effect of the engine when traveling downhill.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

CarManuals2.com



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

CarManuals2.com

# Mobility

In order to always ensure your mobility, you will find important information on operating fluids, wheels and tires, maintenance and Roadside Assistance in the following.

# Refueling

## Vehicle features and options

CarManuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Information

Observe the fuel recommendation, refer to page 194, prior to refueling.

CAUTION

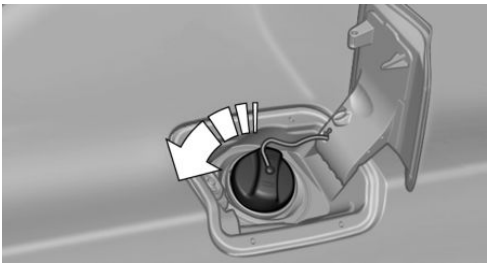
With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are no longer ensured. There is risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

## Fuel lid

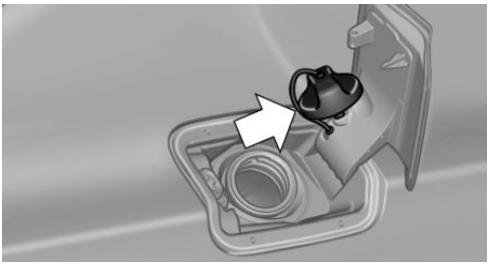
### Opening

1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.

2. Turn the tank lid counterclockwise.



3. Place the tank lid in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



### Closing

1. Fit the lid and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

WARNING

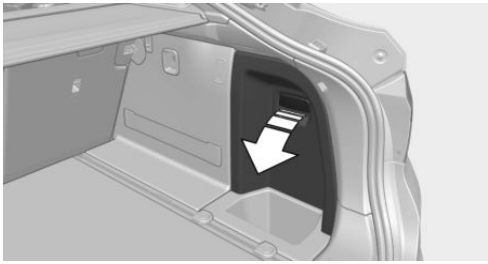
The retaining strap of the fuel cap be jammed and crushed during closing. In this case, the lid cannot be correctly closed and fuel vapors or fuel can escape. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the lid.◀

### Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

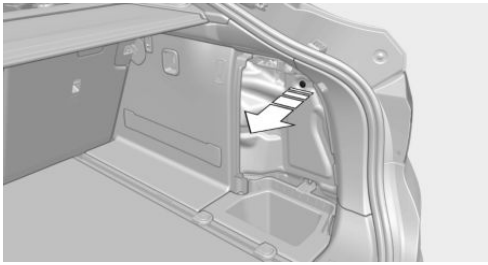
E. g. in the event of an electrical malfunction.

The release is located in the trunk.

1. Open the cover on the right side trim.



2. Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol. This releases the fuel filler flap.



CarManuals2.com

## Observe the following when refueling

CAUTION

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. On contact with painted surfaces, damage may occur to these surfaces. The environment is polluted. There is risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.◀

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station.

# Fuel

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Fuel recommendation

### General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter helps make a cold start easier, e.g.

### Information

CAUTION

Even fuels that conform to the specifications can be of low quality. This may cause engine problems, for instance poor engine start-up behavior, poor handling and/or poor performance. There is risk of property damage. In case of engine problems, switch gas stations or use a brand name fuel with a higher octane rating.◀

### Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

CarManuals2.com

CAUTION

Even small amounts of wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and the engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, e.g. manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i. e., E10, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should satisfy the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

CAUTION

Wrong fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is risk of property damage. Do not use a fuel with a higher ethanol percentage than recommended or one with other types of alcohol, e.g. M5 to M100.◀

### Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

### Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 89.

CAUTION

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is risk of prop-

erty damage. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.◀

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

CarManuals2.com

CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.◀

# Wheels and tires

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Tire inflation pressure

### Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.

### Checking the tire inflation pressure

WARNING

A tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, e.g. twice a month and before a long trip.◀

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

Tires heat up while driving, and the tire inflation pressure increases along with the tire's temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications relate to cold tires or tires with the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar, 2 psi.

For Flat Tire Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

For Tire Pressure Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

### Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 197, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

CarManuals2.com

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

### Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 197, and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

## Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

### X4 xDrive28i

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI | |
|---|---|---|
| Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires | | |
| 245/55 R 17 102 H M+S RSC | 2.2 / 32 | 2.2 / 32 |
| 225/60 R 17 99 H M+S RSC<br>245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC<br>245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC<br>245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC<br>245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC | 2.2 / 32 | 2.4 / 35 |
| Front: 245/45 R 19 98 W RSC<br>Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 W RSC | 2.2 / 32<br>- | -<br>2.2 / 32 |
| Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC<br>Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC | 2.2 / 32<br>- | -<br>2.4 / 35 |
| Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC<br>Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC | 2.4 / 35<br>- | -<br>2.8 / 41 |
| Emergency wheel:<br>T 135/80 R 18 104 M | Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h<br>4.2 / 60 | |

CarManuals2.com

### X4 xDrive35i

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI | |
|---|---|---|
| Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires | | |
| 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC<br>245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC | 2.2 / 32 | 2.4 / 35 |
| 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC<br>245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC | 2.2 / 32 | 2.6 / 38 |
| Front: 245/45 R 19 98 W RSC<br>Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 W RSC | 2.2 / 32<br>- | -<br>2.2 / 32 |
| Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC<br>Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC | 2.4 / 35<br>- | -<br>2.6 / 38 |

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI | |
|---|---|---|
| Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC<br>Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC | 2.6 / 38<br>- | -<br>2.8 / 41 |
| Emergency wheel:<br>T 135/80 R 18 104 M | Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h<br>4.2 / 60 | |

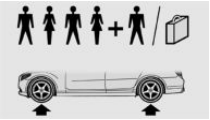
## Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

WARNING

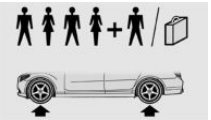
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◄

## Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

### X4 xDrive28i

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI | |
|---|---|---|
| Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires |  | |
| 245/55 R 17 102 H M+S RSC | 2.2 / 32 | 2.6 / 38 |
| 225/60 R 17 99 H M+S RSC<br>245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC<br>245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC | 2.4 / 35 | 2.8 / 41 |
| 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC<br>245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC | 2.6 / 38 | 3.0 / 44 |
| Front: 245/45 R 19 98 W RSC<br>Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 W RSC | 2.4 / 35<br>- | -<br>2.6 / 38 |
| Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC<br>Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC | 2.4 / 35<br>- | -<br>2.6 / 38 |
| Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC<br>Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC | 2.6 / 38<br>- | -<br>3.0 / 44 |
| Emergency wheel:<br>T 135/80 R 18 104 M | Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h<br>4.2 / 60 | |

### X4 xDrive35i

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI | |
|---|---|---|
| Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires |  | |
| 245/50 R 18 100 H M+S RSC<br>245/50 R 18 100 V M+S A/S RSC | 2.6 / 38 | 3.0 / 44 |
| 245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL A/S RSC<br>245/45 R 19 102 V M+S XL RSC | 2.8 / 41 | 3.2 / 46 |

CarManuals2.com

| Tire size | Pressure specifications in bar/PSI | |
|---|---|---|
| Front: 245/45 R 19 98 W RSC<br>Rear: 275/40 R 19 101 W RSC | 2.6 / 38<br>- | -<br>2.8 / 41 |
| Front: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL RSC<br>Rear: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL RSC | 2.6 / 38<br>- | -<br>2.8 / 41 |
| Front: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL RSC<br>Rear: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL RSC | 2.8 / 41<br>- | -<br>3.2 / 46 |
| Emergency wheel:<br>T 135/80 R 18 104 M | Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h<br>4.2 / 60 | |

CarManuals2.com

# Tire identification marks

## Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

## Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph, 160 km/h

R = up to 106 mph, 170 km/h

S = up to 112 mph, 180 km/h

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

## Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0115

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

0115: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

## Tire age

DOT ... 0115: the tire was manufactured in the 1st week of 2015.

## Recommendation

Regardless of wear and tear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

## DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart signifi-

cantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

CarManuals2.com

### Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

### RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 202, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

### M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

## Tire tread

### Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

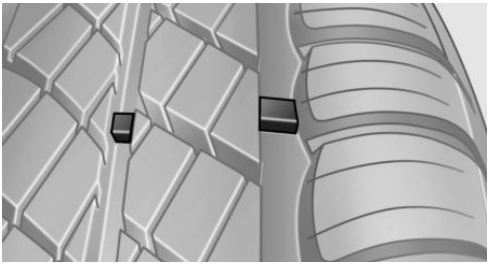
There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tire tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

### Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

### Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

# Tire damage

## General information

Carmanuals2.com

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

## Information

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations while driving.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e. g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed.◀

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is risk of an accident. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.◀

# Changing wheels and tires

## Mounting

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Wheel and tire combination

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the right wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

WARNING

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, e. g. due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is risk of an accident.◀

## Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

## New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

## Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

WARNING

Retreated tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is risk of an accident. Do not use retreated tires.◀

## Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

### Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then a respective symbol is displayed in your field of vision. The plate is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With mounted winter tires, observe and adhere to the permissible maximum speed.

## Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

## Rotating wheels between axles

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated between the axles to achieve even wear. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions at any time. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct if needed.

CarManuals2.com

Rotating the tires is not permissible on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

## Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

# Run-flat tires

## Label

RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels consist of tires that are self-supporting, to a limited degree, and possibly special rims.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

### Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

CarManuals2.com

## Mobility System

### The concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed quickly to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

### Information

- ▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 in/4 mm or more.
- ▷ Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- ▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire.
- ▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- ▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.

⚠ DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

### Storage

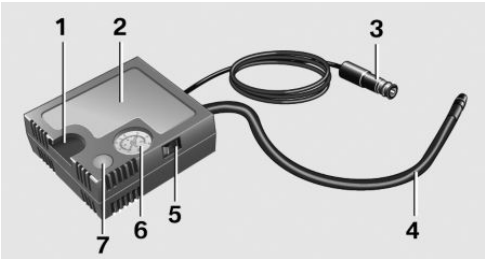
The Mobility System is located under the cargo floor panel.

### Sealant container

- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

### Compressor



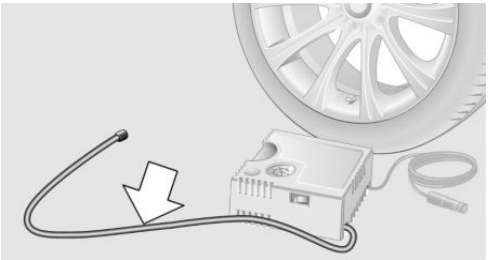

1 Holder for bottle
2 Compressor
3 Connector/cable for socket
4 Connection hose
5 On/off switch
6 Inflation pressure dial
7 Reduce inflation pressure

## Filling the tire with sealant

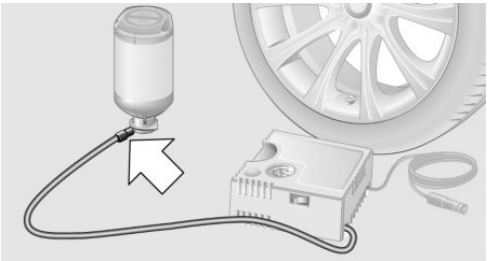
1. Shake the sealant container.

CarManuals2.com

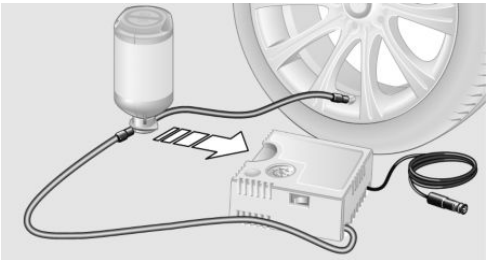
2. Pull the connection hose fully out of the compressor housing. Do not kink the hose.



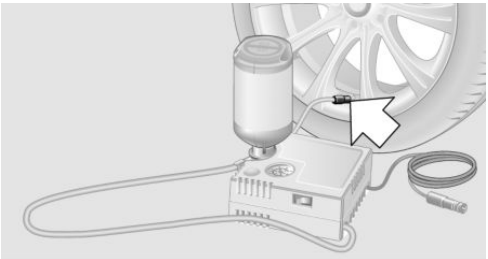
3. Screw the connection hose onto the connector of the sealant container.



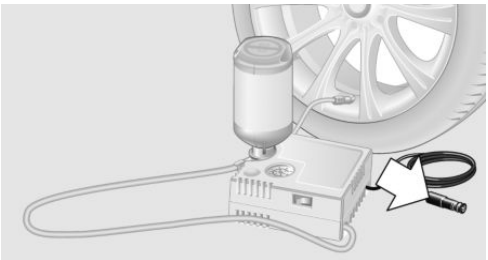
4. Insert the sealant container on the compressor housing in an upright position.



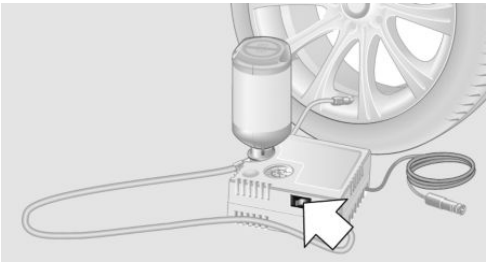
5. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



6. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.



7. With the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.



CAUTION

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 min.◂

Let the compressor run for approx. 3 to 8 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

CarManuals2.com

If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar is not reached:

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Unscrew the filling hose from the wheel.
3. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
4. Inflate the tire again using the compressor.

   If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Stowing the Mobility System

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
2. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the sealant container.
3. Connect the filling hose of the sealant container previously connected to the tire valve with the available connector on the sealant container.

   This prevents leftover sealant from escaping from the container.
4. Wrap the empty sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the trunk.
5. Stow the Mobility System back in the vehicle.

## Distributing the sealant

Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

## To correct the tire inflation pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.
3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.
4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to 2.5 bar.
   - ▷ Increase pressure: with the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ To reduce the pressure: press the button on the compressor.

## Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System as soon as possible.

# Snow chains

## Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 205/65 R 17.
- ▷ 225/60 R 17.
- ▷ 245/50 R 18.
- ▷ 245/45 R 19.

WARNING

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Do not mount snow chains on size 245/55 R 17 tires.◀

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if needed.

## Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

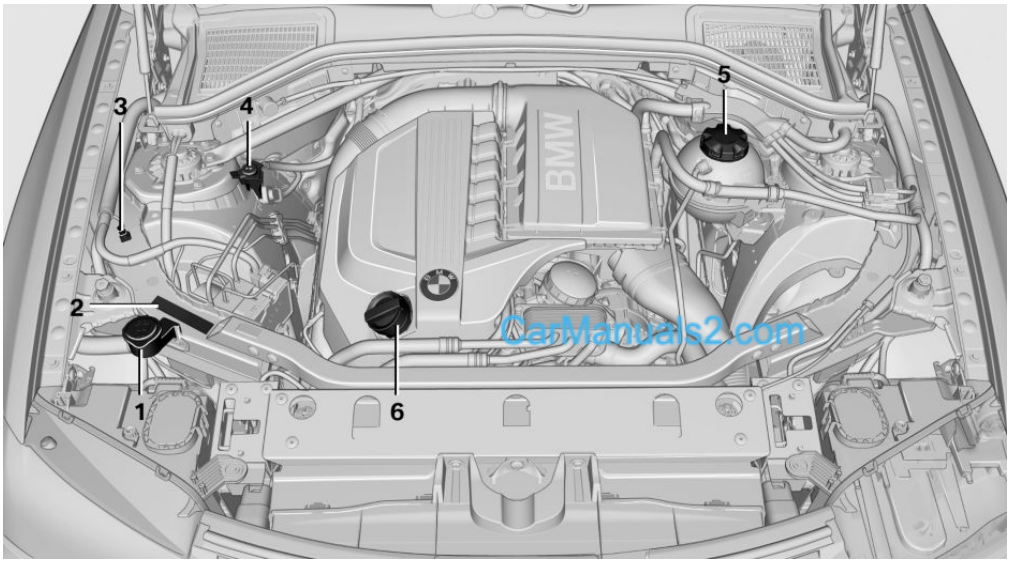
CarManuals2.com

# Engine compartment

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Important features in the engine comp.




1 Washer fluid reservoir
2 Vehicle identification number
3 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
4 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
5 Coolant reservoir
6 Oil filler neck

## Hood

### Information

WARNING
Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety risk. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage.◄

WARNING
The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components can move in the engine compartment with the vehicle switched off, e.g. the cooler fan. There is risk of injuries. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◄

CAUTION

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◀

WARNING

There are protruding parts, e.g. lock hook, on the inside of the hood. There is risk of injuries. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep these areas clear.◀

WARNING

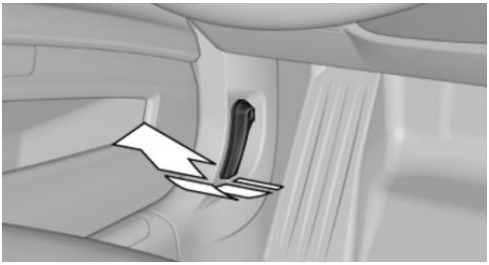
An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.◀

WARNING

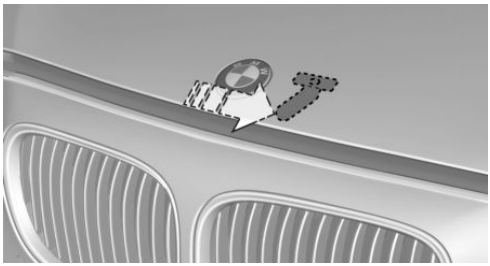
Body parts can be jammed on opening and closing the hood. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.◀

## Opening the hood

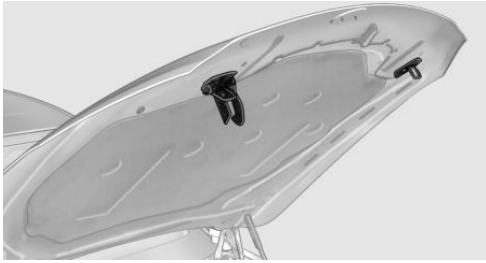
1. Pull the lever.



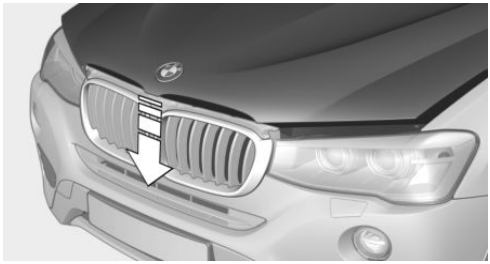
2. Press the release handle and open the hood.



3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.



## Closing the hood



Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 in/40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully.

Make sure you hear the hood engage.

CarManuals2.com

# Engine oil

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Sporty driving style.
- ▷ Break-in of the engine.
- ▷ Idling of the engine.
- ▷ With use of engine oil types that are not approved.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

The vehicle is equipped with electronic oil measurement.

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Status display
- ▷ Detailed measurement

## Electronic oil measurement

### Status display

#### The concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

#### Requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of driving. During a shorter trip, the status of the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

With frequent short-distance trips, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

CarManuals2.com

#### Displaying the engine oil level

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

#### Engine oil level display messages

CAUTION

A too low engine oil level causes engine damage. There is risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.◂

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

CAUTION

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. Have too much engine oil siphoned off by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Different messages appear on the display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

If the engine oil level is too low, within the next 125 miles/200 km Add engine oil, refer to page 210.

## Detailed measurement

### The concept

In the detailed measurement the engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Gasoline engine:

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

### General information

A detailed measurement is only possible with certain engines.

### Requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is on level road.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

### Performing a detailed measurement

In order to perform a detailed measurement of the engine oil level:

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Time: approx. 1 minute.

# Adding engine oil

## Information

CAUTION

A too low engine oil level causes engine damage. There is risk of property damage.

Add engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.◂

CAUTION

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. Have too much engine oil siphoned off by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

WARNING

Operating materials, e.g. oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Observe the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.◂

## General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message displayed in the instrument cluster.

Switch off the ignition and safely park the vehicle before engine oil is added.

## Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 207.

## Opening the oil filler neck

CarManuals2.com

1. Opening the hood, refer to page 207

2. Turn the oil filler neck counter-clockwise.

3. Add motor oil.

# Engine oil types to add

## Information

CAUTION

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.◂

CAUTION

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct viscosity grade.◂

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

## Viscosity grades

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil belongs to one of the viscosity grades SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-30, 0W-20 or 5W-20.

The viscosity grades 0W-20 and 5W-20 are only suitable for particular engines.

## Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

| Gasoline engine |
|---|
| BMW Longlife-01. |
| BMW Longlife-01 FE. |
| BMW Longlife-14 FE+. |

The oil rating BMW Longlife-14 FE+ is only suitable for particular gasoline motors.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

| Gasoline engine |
|---|
| API SL or superior oil rating. |

# Engine oil change

CAUTION

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is risk of property damage. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.◂

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you let the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the motor oil.

BMW recommends
**Original BMW Engine Oil.**

CarManuals2.com

# Coolant

## Vehicle features and options

CarManuals2.com

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Information

WARNING

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to burns. There is risk of injuries. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.◀

WARNING

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is risk of injuries and risk of property damage. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with additives. Do not swallow any additives. Use suitable additives only.◀

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

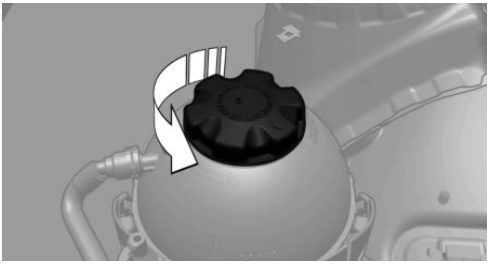
## Coolant level

### Overview

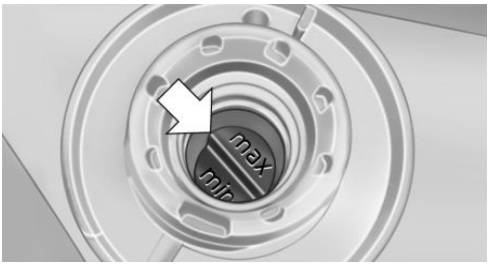
Depending on the engine installation, the coolant reservoir is located on the right side or the left side of the engine compartment.

### Checking

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.

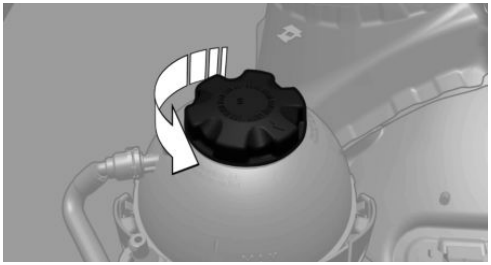


3. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
4. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



### Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Turn the lid until there is an audible click. The arrows on the coolant reservoir and the lid must point towards one another.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

CarManuals2.com

## Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

# Maintenance

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Carmanuals2.com

## Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service recognizes the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

Detailed information on service requirements, refer to page 89, can be displayed on the Control Display.

### Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer's service center can read this data out and suggest an optimized maintenance scope for your vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

### Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

## Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

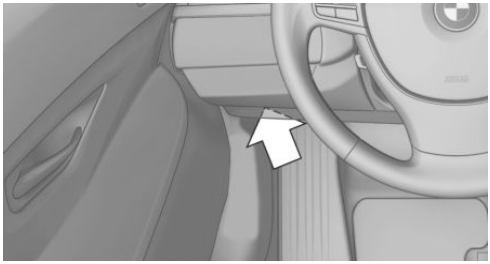
# Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

## Information

CAUTION

Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis can lead to vehicle malfunctions. There is risk of property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly recommends access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center, another qualified service center or repair shop or other authorized persons.◀

## Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

## Emissions

▷ The warning lamp lights up:

Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

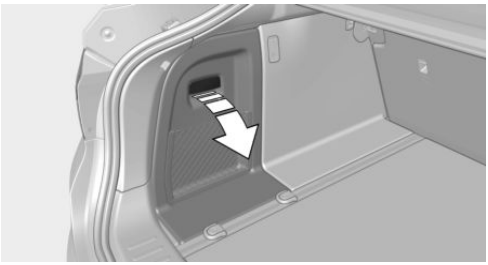
CarManuals2.com

# Replacing components

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the first-aid kit behind the left folding cover in the trunk.

## Wiper blade replacement

### Information

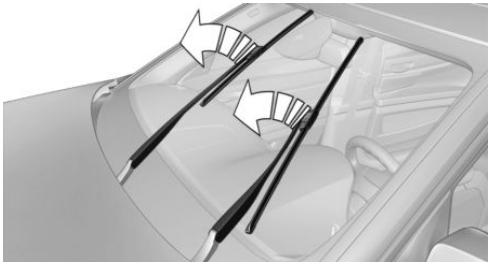
CAUTION

If the wiper arm falls onto the windshield without the wiper blades installed, the windshield can be damaged. There is risk of property damage. Secure the wiper arm when replacing the wiper blades and do not fold down the wipers without the wiper blades installed.◀

### Replacing the wiper blades

CarManuals2.com

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up, refer to page 76, the wiper arms.
2. Fold up the wipers.



3. Position the wiper blade in a horizontal position.
4. Remove the wiper blade toward one side.

5. Insert the new wiper blade in reverse order of removal until it locks in place.
6. Fold down the wipers.

## Lamp and bulb replacement

### Information

#### Lights and bulbs

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have appropriate work performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified

service center or repair shop if you are unfamiliar with it or if it has not been described here.

A spare lamp box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

WARNING

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is risk of injuries. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.◀

WARNING

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lamps in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.◀

DANGER

There can be high voltage in the lighting system. There is danger to life. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

CAUTION

Contaminated bulbs reduce their service life. There is risk of property damage. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

## Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

WARNING

Too intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is risk of injuries. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources for an extended period of time. Do not remove the LED covers.◀

## Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the lights switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the lamp, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Headlight setting

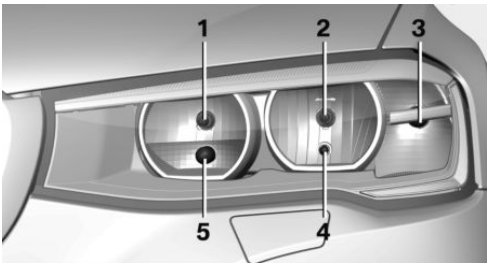
The headlight adjustments can be affected by changing lights and bulbs. After the headlight adjustment was changed, have it checked and, if necessary, corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Carmanuals2.com

# Front lights, bulb replacement

## Halogen headlights

### Overview




**1** High beams/headlight flasher

**2** Low beams

**3** Turn signal/side marker light

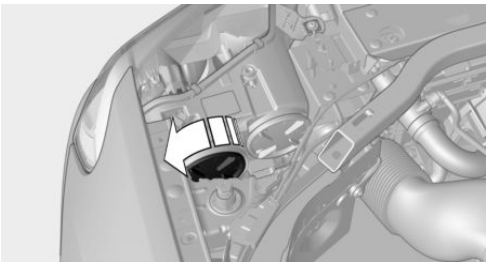
**4** Parking lights

**5** Daytime running lights

### Accessing the low beams and parking lights

Follow general instructions, refer to page 217.

1. Open the hood, refer to page 207.
2. Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove.



3. The upper bulb is the low beam and the lower bulb is the parking lamp.

### Low beams

55-watt bulb, H7.

1. Tip the connector with the bulb down slightly and pull out carefully.
2. Pull the bulb off the connector and insert the new bulb.
3. Install the new bulb in reverse order of removal.
4. Place the cover according to the arrow markings on the headlight housing.
5. Close the headlight housing with the lid.

### Parking lights

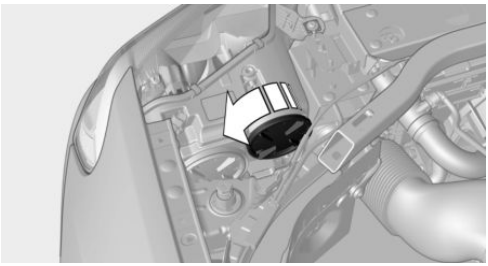
5-watt bulb, W5W.

1. Remove the bulb holder.
2. Carefully remove the bulb from the socket.
3. Install the new bulb in reverse order of removal.
4. Place the cover according to the arrow markings on the headlight housing.
5. Close the headlight housing with the lid.

### Accessing the high beams/headlight flasher and daytime running lights

Follow general instructions, refer to page 217.

1. Open the hood, refer to page 207.
2. Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove.



3. The upper bulb is the high beam/headlight flasher and the lower bulb is the daytime running lights.

CarManuals2.com

### High beams/headlight flasher

55-watt bulb, H7.

1. Tip the connector with the bulb up slightly and pull out carefully.
2. Pull the bulb off the connector and insert the new bulb.
3. Install the new bulb in reverse order of removal.
4. Place the cover according to the arrow markings on the headlight housing.
5. Close the headlight housing with the lid.

### Daytime running lights

21-watt bulb, W21W.

1. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove.
2. Carefully remove the bulb from the socket.

3. Install the new bulb in reverse order of removal.
4. Place the cover according to the arrow markings on the headlight housing.
5. Close the headlight housing with the lid.

## Xenon headlights

### Information

Because of the long service life of these bulbs, the likelihood of failure is very low. Switching the lights on and off frequently shortens their service life.

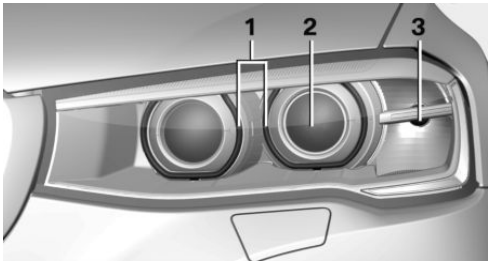
If a bulb fails, turn on the front fog lights and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.

DANGER

There can be high voltage in the lighting system. There is danger to life. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the work on the lighting system including bulb replacement be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

For checking and adjusting headlamp aim, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Overview




**1** Parking lights / daytime running lights

**2** Low beams/high beams/headlight flasher

**3** Turn signal/side marker light

### Xenon headlights

Low beams and high beams are designed with xenon technology.

The parking lights and daylight running lights are made using LED technology.

Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

## LED headlights

### Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

With LED headlights, all front lights and side indicators are designed with LED technology.

If an LED fails, switch on the front fog lamps and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.

Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

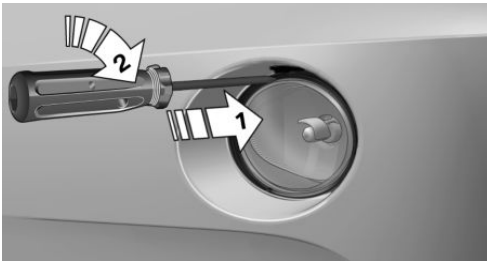
## Front fog lights

CarManuals2.com

Follow general instructions, refer to page 217.

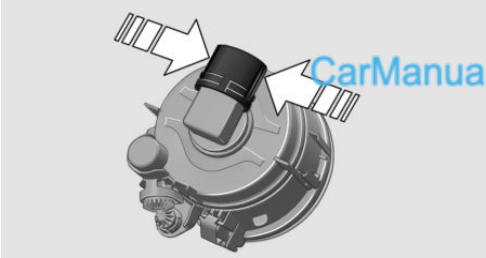
35-watt bulb, H8.

1. Insert the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, with the flat side on the clip, arrow 1.



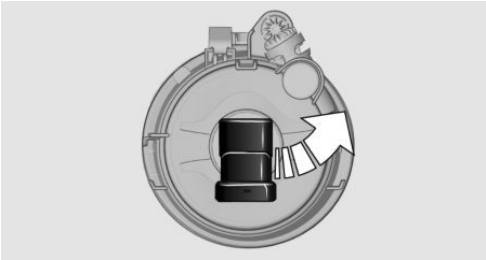

2. Turn the screwdriver by 90°, arrow 2.
3. Remove the front fog lamp toward the front.

4. Detach the connector.



CarManuals2.com

5. Turn the bulb bracket and remove it.



6. Remove the bulb and replace it.
7. Proceed in reverse order to insert the front fog lamp. Note the guide rails in doing so.

## LED front fog lights

These front fog lights are made using LED technology. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

## Turn signal

### Information

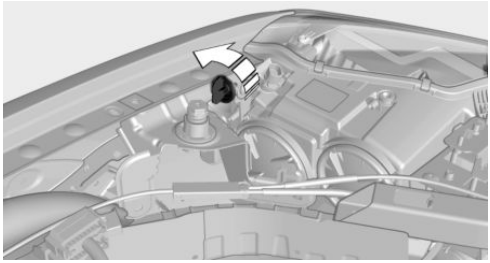
Follow general instructions, refer to page 217.

The turn signals are located next to each low beam in the engine compartment.

21-watt bulb, PY 21W.

### Replacement

1. Open the hood, refer to page 207.
2. Turn the bulb with the socket counter-clockwise and carefully remove.



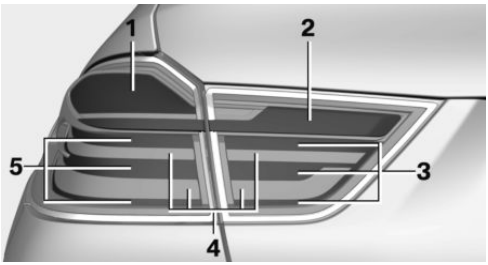
3. Push the bulb down slightly and unscrew from the socket.
4. To insert the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

### Turn signal in exterior mirror

The turn signals in the exterior mirrors feature LED technology. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

## Tail lights, bulb replacement

### Overview




**1** Turn signal
**2** Backup lamp
**3** Inside brake lamp
**4** Rear lamp
**5** Brake light

## Bulb replacement, exterior tail lights

### General information

Follow general instructions, refer to page 217.

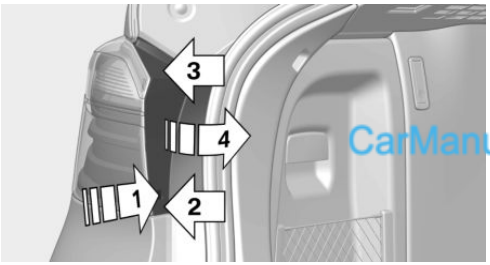
Turn signal: 21-watt bulb, P21W.

Outer brake lamp: 24-watt bulb, PW24W.

The rear lamp features LED technology. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

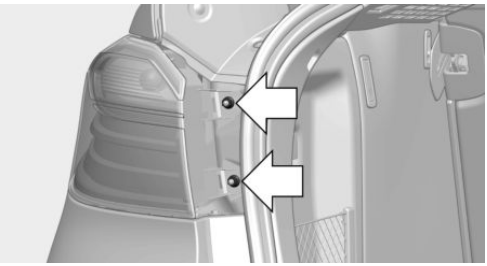
### Removing the exterior tail lamp

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Insert the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 217, frontward at an angle into the cover opening, arrow 1.




3. Pry the cover out of the lower plug connector, arrow 2.
   - ▷ Left vehicle side: pry to the right.
   - ▷ Right vehicle side: pry to the left.
4. To unfasten the upper plug connector, arrow 3, carefully remove the cover, arrow 4.

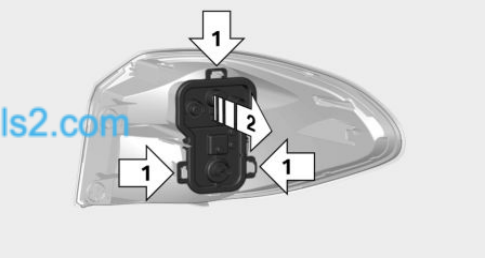
5. Loosen the two nuts with the screwdriver handle, arrows.



6. Remove the tail lamp from the body and detach the connector from the bulb holder.

### Replacing the bulbs

1. Loosen the three fasteners, arrows 1, on the bulb holder and remove the bulb holder from the tail lamp, arrow 2.



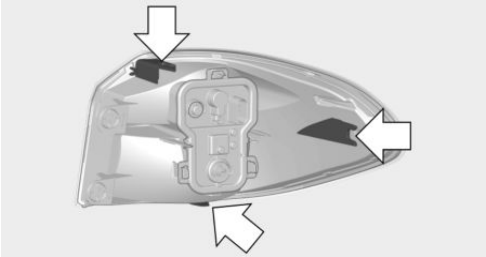

2. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove. The turn signal is the upper bulb and the brake lamp is the lower bulb on the bulb holder.
3. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

### Installing the tail lamp

1. Attach the connector to the tail lamp.

CarManuals2.com

2. Place the cover on the three fixing points, arrows, and push in. Make sure that the tail lamp engages in the fasteners.



3. Screw the two nuts tight and mount the cover.

## Lights in the tailgate

### General information

Follow general instructions, refer to page 217.

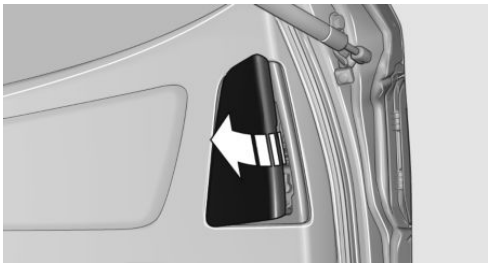
Reversing lights: 21-watt bulb, P21W

Inner brake lamp: 21-watt bulb, H21W.

### Accessing the lights

CarManuals2.com

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Pull out the cover at the recessed grip, arrow.



3. Detach the connector.

### Replacing the reversing lamp and inner brake lamp

1. Detach the bulb holder from the tail lamp.

   The reversing lamp is the upper bulb and the inner brake lamp is the lower bulb on the bulb holder.

2. To replace the reversing lamp, pull off the bulb carefully.

   To replace the inner brake lamp, push the bulb down and turn it to the left.

### Installing the bulb holder

1. Attach the connector to the tail lamp.
2. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder.

   Ensure that the bulb holder is firmly attached.

## Rear lights and license plate lights

Follow general instructions, refer to page 217.

These lights are made using LED technology. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

# Changing wheels

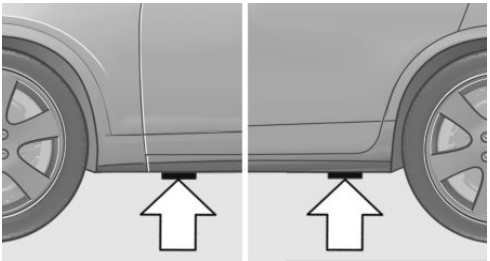
## Information

When using run-flat tires or sealants, a tire does not need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

Which is why no spare tire is available.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the positions shown.

# Vehicle battery

## Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Battery replacement

CAUTION

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions.There is risk of property damage. Information on the compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.◀

After a battery replacement, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the vehicle battery be registered on the vehicle by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop to ensure that all comfort features are fully available and that any Check Control messages of these comfort features are no longer displayed.

## Charging the battery

### General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for prolonged periods, longer than a month.

### Information

CAUTION

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12V on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

### Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 228, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

## Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, e. g.:

- ▷ Seat and mirror memory: store the positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Glass sunroof and sliding visor: initialize the system, refer to page 51.

CarManuals2.com

### Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

CarManuals2.com

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

## Fuses

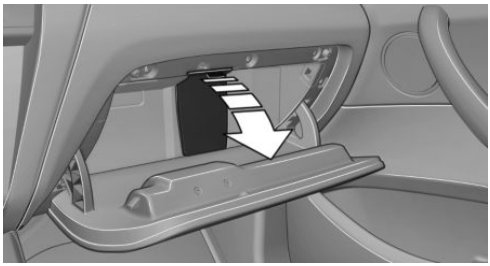
### Information

WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.◀

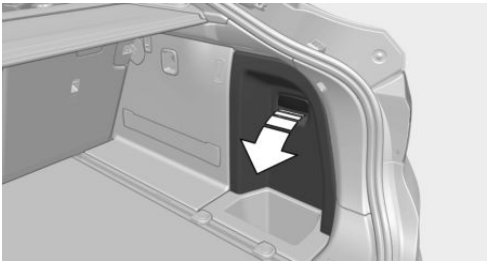
Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the trunk.

### In the glove compartment



Swing the cover down, arrow.

### In the trunk



Open the cover on the right side trim, arrow, and remove the sound insulation.

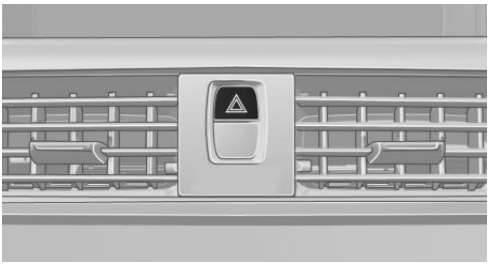
Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.

# Breakdown assistance

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Hazard warning flashers



The button is located in the center console.

## Intelligent Emergency Request

### The concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be made through this system.

### General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

### Overview

SOS button in the roofliner

### Requirements

- ▷ The SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ The radio-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The Assist system is functional.

### Initiating an Emergency Request

CarManuals2.com

1. Press the cover briefly to open it.
2. Press the SOS button until the LED at the button lights up green.

- ▷ The LED lights up green: an Emergency Request was initiated.

  If a cancel prompt appears on the display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

  If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

- ▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

  When the emergency request is received at the BMW Response Center, the BMW Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.

  Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further

steps to help you under certain circumstances.

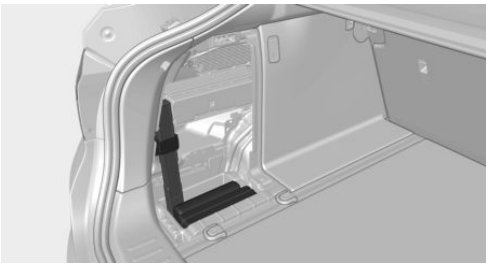
For this, data are transmitted to the BMW Response Center which serve to determine the necessary rescue measures. E. g. the current position of the vehicle, if it can be established.

▷ If the LED is flashing green, but the BMW Response Center can no longer be heard via the speaker, you can nevertheless still be heard at the BMW Response Center.

### Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

## Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located behind the left-hand cover in the trunk.

To remove, loosen the bracket.

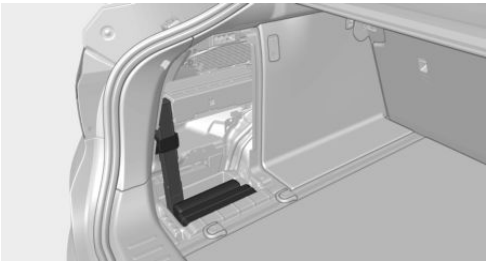
## First-aid kit

### Information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

### Storage



The first-aid kit is located behind the left-hand cover in the trunk.

## Jump-starting

### General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

### Information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.◂

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

### Preparation

CAUTION

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.◂

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. This information can be found on the battery.

CarManuals2.com

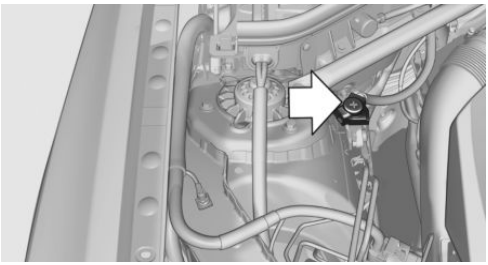
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

CarManuals2.com

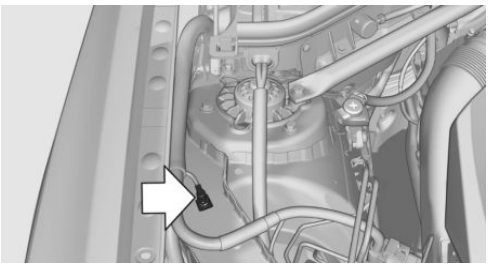
## Starting aid terminals

WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparks formation can occur. There is risk of injuries. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.◀



The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.



The body ground or a special nut acts as the battery negative terminal.

## Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the lid of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

## Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if needed.

# Tow-starting and towing

## Information

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident.

Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◂

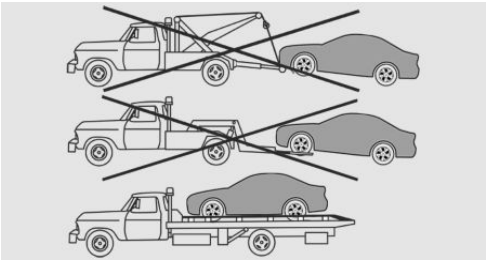
## Steptronic transmission: transporting your vehicle

### Information

CAUTION

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is risk of property damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◂

### Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

CAUTION

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means.◂

Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.

## Towing other vehicles

### Information

WARNING

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.◂

CarManuals2.com

CAUTION

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.◂

- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
- ▷ If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

### Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

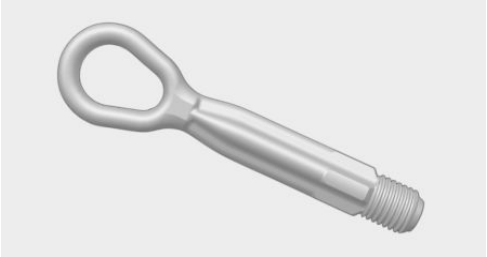
### Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

## Tow fitting

### General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

The tow fitting and the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 217, are together in the cargo area.

### Information

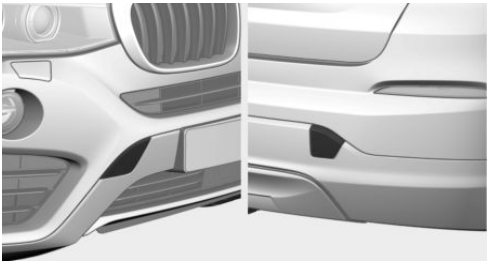
CAUTION

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there can be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is risk of property damage. Observe the notes on using the tow fitting.◀

Use of the tow fitting:

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

## Screw thread for tow fitting



Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

## Tow-starting

### Steptronic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic transmission.

Have the cause of the starting problems fixed.

CarManuals2.com

# Care

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Car washes

### General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

### Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

#### Information

CAUTION

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is risk of property damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the user's manual for the high-pressure washer.◂

#### Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▷ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 in/30 cm.
- ▷ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 inches/80 cm.

### Automatic car washes

#### Information

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.
- ▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.
- ▷ Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 75, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.
- ▷ In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 47.

CAUTION

Too high guide rails in car washes can damage body parts. There is risk of property damage. Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm.◂

#### Before driving into a car wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a car wash, take the following steps:

Steptronic transmission:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.
3. Deactivating Automatic Hold, refer to page 72.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Switch the engine off.

In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and a Check-Control message is displayed.

CAUTION

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when the ignition is switched off. There is risk of property damage. Do not switch ignition off in car washes.◀

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

To start the engine with Steptronic transmission:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button without stepping on the brake turns the ignition off.

### Selector lever position

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically:

- ▷ When the ignition is switched off.
- ▷ After approx. 15 minutes.

## Headlights

- ▷ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleansers.
- ▷ Soak areas that have been dirtied e. g., from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.
- ▷ Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

## After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

# Vehicle care

## Car care products

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using car care and cleaning products from BMW.

WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is risk of injuries. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.◀

## Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

CarManuals2.com

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

## Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, e.g., with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

CAUTION

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is risk of property damage. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◀

## Caring for special components

### Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

### Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

### Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. For cleaning, use only water and suitable care products, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends original BMW care products.

CarManuals2.com

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

### Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

### Plastic components

These include:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roofliner.
- ▷ Lamp lenses.
- ▷ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▷ Matt black spray-coated components.
- ▷ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Do not soak the roofliner.

CAUTION

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.◀

### Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

WARNING

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.◀

CarManuals2.com

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the switchs to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

## Carpets and floor mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g. for cleaning.◀

Floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

## Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

## Displays/Screens/protective glass of the Head-up Display

CAUTION

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is risk of property damage. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.◀

CAUTION

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is risk of property damage. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.◀

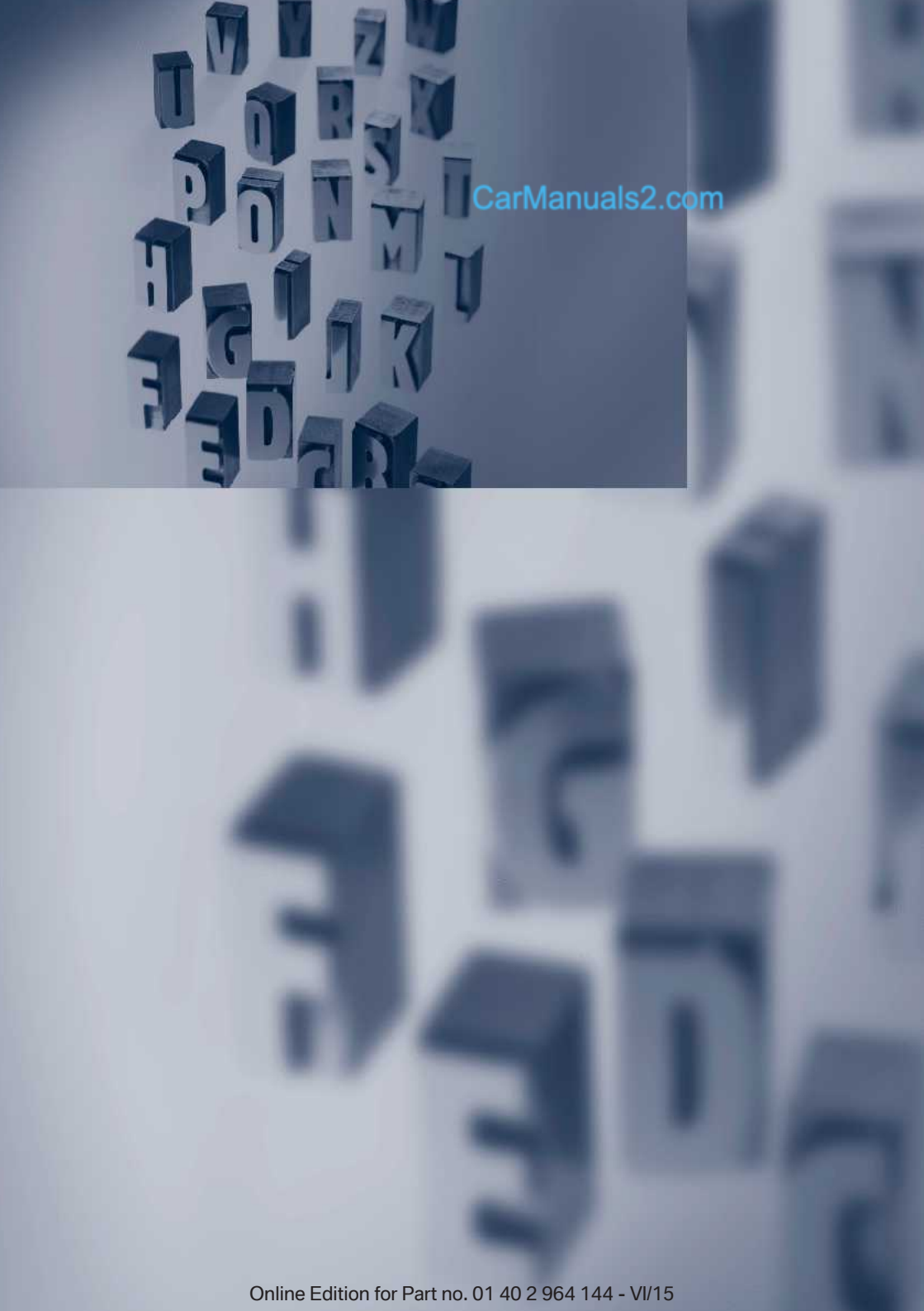
Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-up Display using a microfiber cloth and commercially available dish-washing soap.

## Long-term

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

# Reference

This chapter contains the technical data and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.

CarManuals2.com

# Technical data

## Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## Information

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority.

## Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

CarManuals2.com

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for example, a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

| X4 | | |
|---|---|---|
| Width with mirrors | inches/mm | 82.3/2,089 |
| Width without mirrors | inches/mm | 74.1/1,881 |
| Height | inches/mm | 63.9/1,624 |
| Length | inches/mm | 184.3/4,680 |
| Wheelbase | inches/mm | 110.6/2,810 |
| Smallest turning radius diam. | ft/m | 39/11.9 |

## Weights

| X4 xDrive28i | | |
|---|---|---|
| Approved gross vehicle weight | lbs/kg | 5,060/2,295 |
| Load | lbs/kg | 910/413 |
| Approved front axle load | lbs/kg | 2,370/1,075 |
| Approved rear axle load | lbs/kg | 2,820/1,279 |
| Approved roof load capacity | lbs/kg | 220/100 |
| Cargo area capacity | cu ft | 17.7–49.4 |
| Canada: trunk capacity | liters | 500–1,400 |

| X4 xDrive35i | | |
|---|---|---|
| Approved gross vehicle weight | lbs/kg | 5,180/2,350 |
| Load | lbs/kg | 910/413 |
| Approved front axle load | lbs/kg | 2,490/1,129 |
| Approved rear axle load | lbs/kg | 2,820/1,279 |
| Approved roof load capacity | lbs/kg | 220/100 |
| Cargo area capacity | cu ft | 17.7–49.4 |
| Canada: trunk capacity | liters | 500–1,400 |

## Capacities

| | US gal/liters | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| Fuel tank, approx. | 17.7/67 | Fuel quality, refer to page 194 |

CarManuals2.com

# Appendix

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

# Everything from A to Z

## Index

### A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 126
ACC, Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go 133
Acceleration Assistant, refer to Launch Control 80
Accessories and parts 7
Activated-charcoal filter 160
Active Blind Spot Detection 123
Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go, ACC 133
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display 125
Adaptive Light Control 100
Additives, oil 211
Adjustments, seats/head restraints 52
After washing vehicle 232
Airbags 103
Airbags, indicator/warning light 104
Air circulation, refer to Recirculated-air mode 159
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 156
Air, dehumidifying, see Cooling function 156, 159
Air distribution, manual 157, 160
Air flow, automatic climate control 157, 160
Air pressure, tires 196
Air vents, refer to Ventilation 161
Alarm system 46
Alarm, unintentional 47
All around the center console 16
All around the roofliner 17
All around the steering wheel 14
All-season tires, see Winter tires 202
All-wheel-drive 128
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter 164
Alternative oil types 211
Ambient light 102
Antifreeze, washer fluid 76
Antilock Brake System, ABS 126
Anti-slip control, see DSC 126
Approved axle load 239
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 171
Arrival time 93
Ash tray 165
Assistance when driving off 132
Assist system, see Intelligent Safety 112
AUTO H button 72
AUTO H button, refer to Automatic Hold 72
AUTO intensity 159
Automatic car wash 231
Automatic climate control 155
Automatic Cruise Control with Stop & Go 133
Automatic Curb Monitor 60
Automatic deactivation, Front-seat passenger airbags 105
Automatic headlight control 99
Automatic Hold 72
Automatic locking 46
Automatic recirculated-air control 159
Automatic tailgate 40
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission 77
AUTO program, automatic climate control 159
AUTO program, climate control 156
AUTO program, intensity 159
Auto Start/Stop function 69
Average fuel consumption 92
Average speed 92
Axle loads, weights 239

### B

Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support 54
Backrest, width 54
Bad road trips 176
Band-aids, see First-aid kit 227
Bar for tow-starting/towing 229
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 224
Battery replacement, vehicle remote control 35
Battery, vehicle 224
Belts, safety belts 55
Beverage holder, cupholder 171
BMW Assist, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
BMW Driver's Guide App 6
BMW Homepage 6
BMW Internet page 6

CarManuals2.com



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15

BMW maintenance system 215
Bonus range, ECO PRO 185
Bottle holder, see Cupholder 171
Brake assistant 126
Brake discs, break-in 176
Brake force display 125
Brake lights, adaptive 125
Brake lights, brake force display 125
Brake pads, break-in 176
Braking, hints 178
Breakdown assistance 226
Break-in 176
Brightness of Control Display 95
Bulb replacement 217
Bulb replacement, front 218
Bulb replacement, rear 221
Bulbs and lights 217
Button, RES 136
Button, Start/Stop 67
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 227

## C

California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Camera lenses, care 234
Camera, rearview camera 145
Camera, Side View 149
Camera, Top View 148
Can holder, see Cupholder 171
Car battery 224
Car care products 232
Care, displays 234
Care, vehicle 232
Cargo 180
Cargo area 168
Cargo area, enlarging 168
Cargo area, storage compartments 172
Cargo cover 168
Cargo, securing 181
Cargo straps, securing cargo 181
Car key, see Remote control 34
Carpet, care 234
Car wash 231
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 177
CBS Condition Based Service 215
CD/Multimedia, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Center armrest 171
Center console 16
Central locking system 40
Central screen, see Control Display 18
Changes, technical, see Own Safety 7
Changing parts 217
Changing wheels 223
Changing wheels/tires 201
Chassis number, see vehicle identification number 10
Check Control 83
Checking the oil level electronically 209
Children, seating position 63
Children, transporting safely 63
Child restraint fixing system 63
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 65
Child restraint fixing systems, mounting 64
Child safety locks 66
Child seat, mounting 64
Child seats 63
Chrome parts, care 233
Cigarette lighter 165
Cleaning displays 234
Climate control 155, 158
Clock 87
Closing/opening via door lock 39
Closing/opening with remote control 37
Closing the tailgate with no-touch activation 44
Clothes hooks 172
Coasting 187
Coasting with engine decoupled, coasting 187
Coasting with idling engine 187
Cockpit 14
Combination switch, see Turn signals 73
Combination switch, see Wiper system 74
Comfort Access 42
COMFORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 131
Compartments in the doors 171
Compass 93
Compressor 203
Condensation on windows 157, 160
Condensation under the vehicle 179
Condition Based Service CBS 215
Confirmation signal 45
ConnectedDrive, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
ConnectedDrive Services
Connecting electrical devices 166
Continued driving with a flat tire 108, 111
Control Display 18
Control Display, settings 94
Controller 19

CarManuals2.com

Control systems, driving stability 126
Convenient opening with the remote control 38
Coolant 213
Coolant temperature 87
Cooling function 156, 159
Cooling, maximum 159
Cooling system 213
Cornering light 100
Corrosion on brake discs 178
Cosmetic mirror 165
Courtesy lamps during unlocking 37
Courtesy lamps with the vehicle locked 38
Cruise control 139
Cruise control, active with Stop & Go 133
Cruising range 88
Cupholder 171
Current fuel consumption 88

## D

CarManuals2.com

Damage, tires 201
Damping control, dynamic 129
Data, technical 238
Date 88
Daytime running lights 100
Daytime running lights, bulb replacement 219
Defrosting, see Windows, defrosting 157, 160
Dehumidifying, air 156, 159
Deleting personal data 25
Deletion of personal data 25
Destination distance 93
Digital clock 87
Dimensions 238
Dimmable exterior mirrors 61
Dimmable interior rearview mirror 61
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 73
Display, electronic, instrument cluster 82
Display in windshield 95
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 102
Displays, cleaning 234
Disposal, coolant 214
Disposal, vehicle battery 225
Distance control, see PDC 142
Distance to destination 93
Divided screen view, split screen 23
Door lock 39
Door lock, see Remote control 34
Downhill control 128
Drive-off assistant 132
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 126
Driving Dynamics Control 130
Driving instructions, break-in 176
Driving mode 130
Driving notes, general 177
Driving on bad roads 176
Driving stability control systems 126
Driving tips 177
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 126
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 127
Dynamic Damping Control 129
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 126
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 127

## E

ECO PRO 184
ECO PRO, bonus range 185
ECO PRO display 184
ECO PRO driving mode 184
ECO PRO mode 184
ECO PRO Tip - driving instruction 186
EfficientDynamics 186
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 82
Electronic oil measurement 209
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 126
Emergency detection, remote control 35
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 192
Emergency Request 226
Emergency start function, engine start 35
Emergency unlocking, tailgate 42
Emergency unlocking, transmission lock 80
Energy Control 88
Energy recovery 88
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 69
Engine, automatic switch-off 69
Engine compartment 207
Engine compartment, working in 207
Engine coolant 213
Engine idling when driving, coasting 187
Engine oil 209
Engine oil, adding 210
Engine oil additives 211
Engine oil change 211
Engine oil filler neck 210
Engine oil temperature 87
Engine oil types, alternative 211
Engine oil types, suitable 211
Engine start during malfunction 35

Engine start, jump-starting 227
Engine start, refer to Starting the engine 68
Engine stop 68
Engine temperature 87
Entering a car wash 231
Equipment, interior 163
Error displays, see Check Control 83
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 126
Exchanging wheels/tires 201
Exhaust system 177
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 61
Exterior mirrors 59
External start 227
External temperature display 87
External temperature warning 87
Eyes for securing cargo 181

## F

Failure message, see Check Control 83
False alarm, see Unintentional alarm 47
Fan, see Air flow 157, 160
Filler neck for engine oil 210
Fine wood, care 233
First-aid kit 227
Fitting for towing, see Tow fitting 230
Flat tire, changing wheels 223
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 110
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 106
Flat tire, warning lamp 107, 110
Flooding 177
Floor carpet, care 234
Floor mats, care 234
Folding back rear seat backrests 168
Fold-out position, wiper 76
Foot brake 178
Front airbags 103
Front-end collision warning with braking function 116
Front-end collision warning with City Braking function 113
Front fog lamps, , LED, bulb replacement 221
Front fog lights 101
Front fog lights, front, bulb replacement 220
Front lights 218
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 105
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator lamp 105
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 110
Fuel 194
Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption 92
Fuel filler flap 192
Fuel gauge 87
Fuel lid 192
Fuel quality 194
Fuel recommendation 194
Fuel, tank capacity 239
Fuse 225

## G

Garage door opener, see Universal Integrated Remote Control 163
Gasoline 194
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 78
Gear shift indicator 89
General driving notes 177
Glare shield 165
Glass sunroof, powered 49
Glove compartment 170
Gross vehicle weight, approved 239

## H

Halogen headlights, bulb replacement 218
Handbrake, see Parking brake 71
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 164
Hazard warning flashers 226
HDC Hill Descent Control 128
Head airbags 103
Headlight control, automatic 99
Headlight courtesy delay feature 99
Headlight courtesy delay feature via remote control 39
Headlight flasher 74
Headlight flasher, bulb replacement 219
Headlight glass 218
Headlights 218
Headlights, care 232
Head restraints 52
Head restraints, front 57
Head restraints, rear 58
Head-up Display 95
Head-up Display, care 234
Heavy cargo, stowing 181
High-beam Assistant 100
High beams 74
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 100
High beams, bulb replacement 219
Hill Descent Control HDC 128
Hills 178
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 132
Holder for beverages 171
Homepage 6

CarManuals2.com

Hood 207
Horn 14
Hot exhaust system 177
HUD Head-up Display 95
Hydroplaning 177

## I

Ice warning, see External temperature warning 87
Icy roads, see External temperature warning 87
Identification marks, tires 199
Identification number, see vehicle identification number 10
iDrive 18
Ignition key, see Remote control 34
Ignition off 67
Ignition on 67
Indication of a flat tire 107, 110
Indicator and alarm lamps, see Check Control 83
Indicator lamp, see Check Control 83
Individual air distribution 157, 160
Individual settings, see Personal Profile 35
Inflation pressure, tires 196
Inflation pressure warning, tires 110
Info display, refer to On-Board computer 92
Information 6
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 107
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 110
Instrument cluster 82
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 82
Instrument lighting 102
Integrated key 34
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 30
Intelligent Emergency Request 226
Intelligent Safety 112
Intensity, AUTO program 159
Interior equipment 163
Interior lights 102
Interior lights during unlocking 37
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 38
Interior motion sensor 47
Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature 61
Interior rearview mirror, manually dimmable 61
Internet page 6
Interval display, service requirements 89
Interval mode 75

## J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 224
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 78
Jump-starting 227

## K

Key/remote control 34
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 42
Key Memory, see Personal Profile 35
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 77
Knee airbag 104

## L

Label on recommended tires 201
Lamp in the exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 123
Lamp replacement 217
Lamp replacement, front 218
Lamp replacement, rear 221
Lane departure warning 121
Lane margin, warning 121
Language on Control Display 95
Lashing eyes, securing cargo 181
LATCH child restraint system 65
Launch Control 80
Leather, care 232
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 218
Letters and numbers, entering 25
Light 98
Light alloy wheels, care 233
Light control 100
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 218
Lighter 165
Lighting 98
Lights and bulbs 217
Light switch 98
Load 181
Loading 180
Lock, door 39
Locking/unlocking via door lock 39
Locking/unlocking with remote control 37
Locking, automatic 46
Locking, settings 45
Lock, power window 49
Locks, doors, and windows 66
Low beams 98
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 100
Lower back support 54

CarManuals2.com

Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 182
Lumbar support 54

## M

Maintenance 215
Maintenance requirements 215
Maintenance, service requirements 89
Maintenance system, BMW 215
Make-up mirror 165
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 83
Manual air distribution 157, 160
Manual air flow 157, 160
Manual brake, see Parking brake 71
Manual mode, Steptronic transmission 78
Manual operation, door lock 39
Manual operation, exterior mirrors 60
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 192
Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC 143
Manual operation, rearview camera 145
Manual operation, Top View 148
Marking, run-flat tires 202
Master key, see Remote control 34
Maximum cooling 159
Maximum speed, display 90
Maximum speed, winter tires 202
Measurement, units of 95
Medical kit 227
Memory, seat, mirror 58
Menu, EfficientDynamics 186
Menu in instrument cluster 91
Menus, operating, iDrive 18
Menus, refer to iDrive operating concept 20
Messages, see Check Control 83
Microfilter 157, 160
Minimum tread, tires 200
Mirror 59
Mirror memory 58
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 177
Mobility System 203
Modifications, technical, see Own Safety 7
Moisture in headlight 218
Monitor, see Control Display 18
Mounting of child restraint systems 64
Moving sun visor 165
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 14

CarManuals2.com

## N

Navigation, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints 57
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints 58
Neutral cleaner, see wheel cleaner 233
New wheels and tires 201
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 229

## O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 216
OBD, see OBD Onboard Diagnosis 216
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 146
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 194
Odometer 87
Office, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Offroad trips 176
Oil 209
Oil, adding 210
Oil additives 211
Oil change 211
Oil change interval, service requirements 89
Oil filler neck 210
Oil types, alternative 211
Oil types, suitable 211
Old batteries, disposal 225
On-board computer 92
On-board computer, refer to On-board computer 92
Onboard monitor, see Control Display 18
Onboard vehicle tool kit 217
Opening/closing via door lock 39
Opening and closing 34
Opening and closing, without remote control 39
Opening and closing, with remote control 37
Opening the tailgate with no-touch activation 44
Operating concept, iDrive 18
Optional equipment, standard equipment 7
Outside air, refer to Automatic recirculated-air control 159
Overheating of engine, see Coolant temperature 87
Own Safety 7

## P

Paint, vehicle 232
Parallel parking assistant 151
Park Distance Control PDC 142
Parked-car ventilation 161
Parked vehicle, condensation 179
Parking aid, see PDC 142
Parking assistant 151
Parking brake 71
Parking lights 98
Parking lights, bulb replacement 219
Parking with Automatic Hold 72
Parts and accessories 7
Passenger side mirror, tilting downward 60
Pathway lines, rearview camera 146
PDC Park Distance Control 142
Pedestrian warning with city braking function 119
Performance Control 128
Personal Profile 35
Personal Profile, exporting profiles 36
Personal Profile, importing profiles 37
Pinch protection system, glass sunroof 50
Pinch protection system, windows 48
Plastic, care 233
Power failure 224
Power sunroof, glass 49
Power windows 48
Prescribed engine oil types 211
Pressure, tire air pressure 196
Pressure warning, tires 110
Profile, see Personal Profile 35
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 24
Protective function, glass sunroof 50
Protective function, windows 48
Push-and-turn switch, see Controller 19

## R

Radiator fluid 213
Radio-operated key, see Remote control 34
Radio ready state 67
Radio, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Rain sensor 75
Rear lights 221
Rear socket 167
Rearview camera 144
Rearview mirror 59
Rear window defroster 157, 160
Recirculated-air filter 160
Recirculated-air mode 156, 159
Recommended fuel grade 194
Recommended tire brands 201
Refueling 192
Remaining range 88
Remote control/key 34
Remote control, malfunction 39
Remote control, universal 163
Replacement fuse 225
Replacing parts 217
Replacing wheels/tires 201
Reporting safety malfunctions 10
RES button 136
RES button, see Active Cruise Control, ACC 133
RES button, see Cruise control 139
Reserve warning, see Range 88
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 107
Retaining straps, securing cargo 181
Retreaded tires 202
Roadside parking lights 99
RON recommended fuel grade 194
Roofliner 17
Roof load capacity 239
Roof-mounted luggage rack 182
Rope for tow-starting/towing 229
RSC Run Flat System Component, see Run-flat tires 202
Rubber components, care 233
Run-flat tires 202

## S

Safe braking 178
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 56
Safety belts 55
Safety belts, care 233
Safety switch, windows 49
Safety systems, airbags 103
Saving fuel 183
Screen, see Control Display 18
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 217
Screw thread, refer to Screw thread for tow fitting, screw thread for tow fitting 230

Carmanuals2.com

Sealant 203
Seat and mirror memory 58
Seat belts, see Safety belts 55
Seat heating, front 55
Seat heating, rear 55
Seating position for children 63
Seats 52
Selection list in instrument cluster 91
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 78
Sensors, care 234
Service and warranty 8
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 215
Service requirements, display 89
Services, ConnectedDrive
Servotronic 130
SET button, see Active Cruise Control, ACC 133
SET button, see Cruise control 139
Settings, locking/unlocking 45
Settings on Control Display 94
Settings, storing for seat, mirror 58
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 79
Side airbags 103
Side View 149
Signaling, horn 14
Signals when unlocking 45
Sitting safely 52
Size 238
Ski and snowboard bag 169
Slide/tilt glass roof 49
Snow chains 206
Socket 166
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 216
SOS button 226
Spare fuse 225
Speed, average 92
Speed limit detection, onboard computer 93
Speed limiter, display 90
Speed Limit Information 90
Speed warning 94
Split screen 23
SPORT+ - program, Dynamic Driving Control 130
Sport displays, torque display, performance display 93
SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control 131
Sport program, transmission 78
Sport steering, variable 129
Stability control systems 126
Start/stop, automatic function 69
Start/Stop button 67
Start function during malfunction 35
Starting the engine 68
Status control display, tires 107
Status information, iDrive 23
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Steering assistance 130
Steering wheel, adjusting 61
Steering wheel heating 61
Steptronic Sport transmission, refer to Steptronic transmission 77
Steptronic transmission 77
Stopping the engine 68
Storage compartments 170
Storage compartments, locations 170
Storage, tires 202
Storing the vehicle 234
Suitable engine oil types 211
Summer tires, tread 200
Sun visor 165
Supplementary text messages 86
Surround View 144
Switch for Dynamic Driving 130
Switch-on times, parked-car ventilation 162
Switch, refer to Cockpit 14
Symbols 6
Symbols in the status field 23
SYNC program, automatic climate control 160

## T

Tachometer 87
Tailgate, automatic 40
Tailgate, closing with no-touch activation 44
Tailgate, emergency unlocking 42
Tailgate, opening with no-touch activation 44
Tailgate via remote control 38
Tail lights 221
Technical changes, see Own Safety 7
Technical data 238
Telephone, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Temperature, automatic climate control 156, 158
Temperature display for external temperature 87
Temperature, engine oil 87
Tempomat, see Active Cruise Control 133
Terminal, starting aid 228
Text messages, supplementary 86
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 46
Thigh support 54
Tilt alarm sensor 47

CarManuals2.com

Time of arrival 93
Tire damage 201
Tire identification marks 199
Tire inflation pressure 196
Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM 110
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 106
Tires, changing 201
Tire sealant 203
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 196
Tires, run-flat tires 202
Tire tread 200
Tone, see user's manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Tool 217
Top View 147
Total vehicle weight 239
Touchpad 21
Tow fitting 230
Towing 228
Tow lug, see Tow fitting 230
Tow-starting 228
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 106
Traction control 127
TRACTION, driving dynamics 127
Transmission lock, electronic unlocking 80
Transmission, Steptronic transmission 77
Transporting children safely 63
Tread, tires 200
Triple turn signal activation 74
Trip odometer 87
Trip on-board computer 93
Trip recorder, see Trip odometer 87
Turning circle lines, rearview camera 146
Turn signals, operation 73

## U

Unintentional alarm 47
Units of measurement 95
Universal remote control 163
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 78
Unlocking/locking via door lock 39
Unlocking/locking with remote control 37
Unlocking, settings 45
Unpaved roads, cross-country trips 176
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery care 233
USB interface 167

## V

Vanity mirror 165
Variable sport steering 129
Vehicle battery 224
Vehicle battery, replacing 224
Vehicle, break-in 176
Vehicle care 232
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 10
Vehicle jack 224
Vehicle paint 232
Vehicle storage 234
Vehicle wash 231
Ventilation 161
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 161
VIN, see vehicle identification number 10
Voice activation system 27

## W

Warning and indicator lamps, see Check Control 83
Warning displays, see Check Control 83
Warning lamp in the exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 123
Warning messages, see Check Control 83
Warning triangle 227
Warranty 7
Washer fluid 76
Washer fluid reservoir, capacity 239
Washer nozzles, windshield 76
Washer system 74
Washing, vehicle 231
Water on roads 177
Weights 239
Welcome lamps during unlocking 37
Welcome lights 99
Wheel cleaner 233
Wheels, changing 201
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 196
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 110
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 106
Window defroster, rear 157, 160
Windows, powered 48
Windshield washer fluid 76
Windshield washer nozzles 76
Windshield washer system 74
Windshield washer system, see washer/wiper system 74
Windshield wiper, see wiper system 74

CarManuals2.com

Winter storage, care 234
Winter tires, suitable tires 202
Winter tires, tread 200
Wiper 74
Wiper blades, replacing 217
Wiper fluid 76
Wiper, fold-out position 76
Wiper system 74
Wood, care 233
Word match concept, navigation 25
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 217

## X

xDrive 128
Xenon headlights, bulb replacement 220

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine®

CarManuals2.com

01 40 2 964 144 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 964 144 - VI/15